

For UK order enquiries: please contact Bookpoint Ltd, 130 Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4SB. Telephone: +44 (0) 1235 827720. Fax: +44 (0) 1235 400454. Lines are open 09.00–18.00, Monday to Saturday, with a 24-hour message answering service. Details about our titles and how to order are available at www.teachyourself.co.uk

For USA order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Customer Services, PO Box 545, Blacklick, OH 43004-0545, USA. Telephone: 1-800-722-4726. Fax: 1-614-755-5645.

For Canada order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Ryerson Ltd, 300 Water St, Whitby, Ontario L1N 9B6, Canada. Telephone: 905 430 5000. Fax: 905 430 5020.

Long renowned as the authoritative source for self-guided learning – with more than 40 million copies sold worldwide – the **teach yourself** series includes over 300 titles in the fields of languages, crafts, hobbies, business, computing and education.

The publisher has used its best endeavours to ensure that the URLs for external websites referred to in this book are correct and active at the time of going to press. However, the publisher has no responsibility for the websites and can make no guarantee that a site will remain live or that the content is or will remain appropriate.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data: a catalogue record for this title is available from the British Library.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: on file.

First published in UK 2003 by Hodder Education, 338 Euston Road, London, NW1 3BH.

First published in US 2003 by Contemporary Books, a Division of The McGraw-Hill Companies, 1 Prudential Plaza, 130 East Randolph Street, Chicago, IL 60601, USA.

The **teach yourself** name is a registered trade mark of Hodder Headline.

Copyright © 2003 David Norris

In UK: All rights reserved. Apart from any permitted use under UK copyright law, no part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information, storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher or under licence from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited. Further details of such licences (for reprographic reproduction) may be obtained from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited, of 90 Tottenham Court Road, London W1T 4LP.

In US: All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this book may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of Contemporary Books.

Typeset by Transet Ltd., Coventry, England.

Printed in Great Britain for Hodder Education, a division of Hodder Headline, 338 Euston Road, London NW1 3BH, by Cox & Wyman Ltd, Reading, Berkshire.

Hodder Headline's policy is to use papers that are natural, renewable and recyclable products and made from wood grown in sustainable forests. The logging and manufacturing processes are expected to conform to the environmental regulations of the country of origin.

Impression number 10 9 8 7
Year 2007 2006 2005



contents

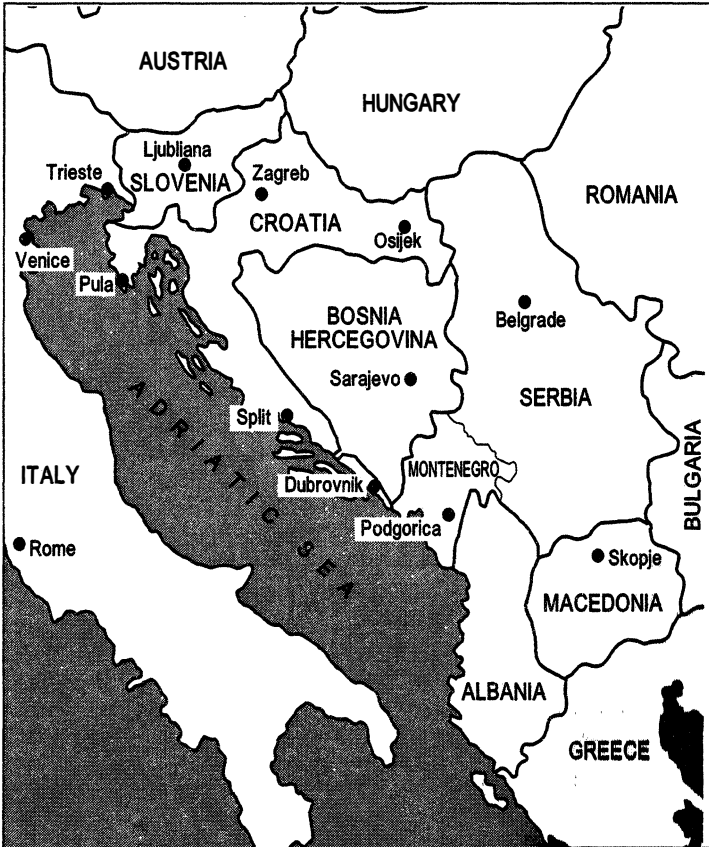
introduction	vii
the country	
the language	
about the book	
how to use the book	
pronunciation and reading	
stress in Croatian	
abbreviations and symbols	
01	u hotelu in the hotel 1
	forming basic statements and questions; introducing yourself and others; identifying yourself and asking others their identity; saying which languages you speak; using words and expressions in greeting
02	u kavani in the café 12
	saying what you want or like; asking others what they want or like; asking what others want to drink; giving and asking for personal information; saying <i>in</i> and <i>to</i> ; making negative statements
03	u gradu in town 23
	expressing basic directions; asking where something is; saying where something is in relation to something else; saying other expressions useful in getting about town; expressing <i>can</i> and <i>have to</i>

- 04** **želim kupiti...** *I want to buy...* **36**
using phrases and expressions when shopping for basic items and when in the post office; saying numbers 1–20; using words for handling money; using expressions relating to need or desire
- 05** **u restoranu** *in the restaurant* **50**
ordering a meal; asking for and stating opinions, preference, advice; expressing agreement; attracting the attention of others; saying *there is/are, there is not/are not*
- 06** **dodite k meni** *come to my place* **63**
giving an invitation; accepting or declining an invitation; giving and asking for directions; giving your address, telephone number; expressing degrees of certainty and uncertainty
- 07** **koliko imate godina?** *how old are you?* **77**
giving and asking for more personal information concerning age, marital status, occupation, where you are from, and about other members of your family
- 08** **kakav stan imate?**
what kind of flat do you have? **92**
describing a room, house, flat; describing your day's routine; using more question words; telling the time; using expressions for the divisions of the day
- 09** **sviđa mi se plivanje** *I like swimming* **107**
describing hobbies, sports, free time; using other expressions of time, days of the week, months of the year
- 10** **na izletu** *on an excursion* **118**
using more phrases to express agreement and disagreement; expressing further degrees of certainty; expressing satisfaction; talking about travelling, the weather, the countryside

- 11 **povratne karte** *return tickets* **130**
expressing that things happened in the past (using the past tense form of the verb); talking more about travelling; asking what happened; asking how long ago something happened
- 12 **imam telefonski broj**
 I have the telephone number **144**
talking about future events; asking questions about the future; talking on the telephone; reporting on events; making indirect questions; expressing *my/your* in other ways
- 13 **na plaži** *on the beach* **156**
expressing dates, numbers above 100 and further expressions of time; expressing feelings, intentions and moods; saying *oneself*
- 14 **ako pada kiša...** *if it rains...* **171**
saying *if* using different levels of possibility and the conditional; further understanding aspects; using expressions for the weather and verbs of movement; saying that you can *see/hear* somebody doing something.
- 15 **kako se osjećate?** *how do you feel?* **185**
talking about health and parts of the body and calling a doctor; expressing degrees of forbidding; forming comparative and superlative adjectives such as *good, better, best*
- 16 **poslovni ugovor** *business contract* **198**
using words and expressions for a business meeting; forming complex sentences joined in the middle by *which*
- 17 **u Osijeku** *in Osijek* **209**
saying more numbers; asking questions with *whose*; using reflexive verbs; talking about changing money; making general enquiries at hotel reception; revision exercises

18	tri pisma <i>three letters</i>	220
	writing letters and short messages for people both in a social and in a business context; revision exercises	
	key to the exercises	229
	summary of language patterns	237
	Croatian–English vocabulary	243
	English–Croatian vocabulary	254
	glossary of grammatical terms	265
	grammar index	268
	taking it further	269

The country



Today's Republic of Croatia is a crescent-shaped country with its northern arm stretching from the border with Serbia in the east to the border with Italy in the west before turning south down the coast of the Adriatic Sea. For the practical needs of most visitors it can be divided into three convenient areas. The flat northern plains of Slavonia contain the most fertile agricultural land with some commercial and industrial centres such as Varaždin and Osijek. Croatia's capital, Zagreb, standing on the very western edge of this region is a typical Central-European city with an old town raised on a hill overlooking an elegant central part built largely in the 19th century. Travelling west from Zagreb visitors come to the Istrian Peninsula and the northern coastal region, with the industrial port of Rijeka and tourist resorts of Opatija, Pula, Rovinj and Poreč. To the south lie the long coast and mountainous hinterland of Dalmatia stretching down the Adriatic Sea. This region attracts the largest number of tourists from abroad to the Mediterranean atmosphere of its old towns like Zadar, Šibenik, Split and Dubrovnik along with the islands of Brač, Hvar and Korčula.

For much of their history the Croats have been ruled by foreign overlords. The independent medieval kingdom of Croatia reached the height of its power and prestige in the 10th century but later disappeared. Hungarians, Turks, Venetians and Austrians have taken their turn at conquering and administering different parts of Croatia. The architecture of many Slavonian cities stands as a monument to Habsburg influence in the region. The remains of a Venetian presence can still be felt in the Istrian Peninsula and Dalmatia where Italian influence was a key element in promoting the arts, literature and architecture of the Renaissance which flourished here from the beginning of the 15th to the end of the 17th century. After 1700 south-eastern Europe was divided between the Catholic Habsburg Empire and the Islamic Ottoman Empire. Croatia represented the frontier of Christian Europe, with the Croats as a nation living on the periphery. They were a colonized people used by the Austrians and Hungarians as their last outpost before the Turks. The local aristocracy took to speaking German or Hungarian which became the languages of government, education and trade. Croatian was reduced to the tongue of an illiterate, feudal, peasant class of people who lived in villages and worked the land.

Croatian society in the 19th century was polarized between those who wanted liberation from Habsburg rule and those who were satisfied with seeking accommodation within the status

quo. The Croats could not hope to win their freedom alone and their plans included some degree of co-operation with other Slavs in the Balkans, principally with the Serbs. Their chance came at the close of the First World War when the Croats were united in one state with their neighbours called the Kingdom of Serbs Croats and Slovenes. The new state was the first Yugoslavia, meaning 'land of the South Slavs'. The promise of national freedom was greeted enthusiastically but initial euphoria turned to disillusionment during the 1920s and 30s when it was felt that the new country was dominated by Serbia. The Croats demanded a greater degree of local autonomy to run their own affairs. In 1941 Yugoslavia was attacked by Germany and the country capitulated in less than two weeks. Yugoslavia was dismembered and an independent Croatian state was created under the Ustaše, the Croatian Fascist Party supported by the Axis Powers. The Ustaše followed a rigid policy of racial purity against Serbs, Romanies and Jews. Following Germany's defeat in 1945, Yugoslavia was resurrected under the Communist Party of Yugoslavia and its leader Josip Broz Tito.

Croatia was one of six Republics (the others being Bosnia-Herzegovina, Macedonia, Montenegro, Serbia and Slovenia) in the socialist federation of Yugoslavia. The Republics had little or no local autonomy and real political power was firmly held by the Communist Party's Central Committee. However, in 1948 Yugoslavia was expelled from the Cominform organization of states in Eastern Europe, which was dominated by the Soviet Union. The country embarked on a series of economic reforms and undertook measures towards political liberalization bringing Yugoslavia closer to the West. Croatia began to attract tourists from Britain and Germany to its beautiful coastline and eventually became a favourite tourist spot. President Tito insisted on the unity of Yugoslavia until his death in 1980 after which members of the federation began to pursue individual rather than joint interests. Consequently, the state lurched from one crisis to another in the 1980s until tensions reached breaking point and the socialist federation faced collapse. The first free elections in Croatia were held in April 1990 and were won by the nationalist Croatian Democratic Union. Croatia and Slovenia wanted independence and they were granted international recognition as sovereign states in January 1992. However, civil war had already broken out and spread to Bosnia later that year. Peace returned to the region with the Dayton Agreement at the end of 1995.

The language

Croatian is one of the family of Slavonic languages. This family is divided into three groups: the Eastern Slavonic languages including Byelorussian, Russian and Ukrainian; the Western group with Polish, Czech, Slovak and Sorbian; the Southern group which numbers Bulgarian, Croatian, Macedonian, Serbian and Slovenian. Croatian and Serbian are particularly close and were formerly regarded as one language called Serbo-Croat, although most native speakers now recognize differences which are not only of a linguistic but also of a cultural nature. Serbian and Croatian remain mutually comprehensible as the standard forms of language spoken across most of today's Bosnia, Croatia, Montenegro and Serbia. Croatian has three main dialects with their names based on their respective words meaning what: *kaj*, *ča* and *što*. The *kaj* dialect is spoken in the region to the north of Zagreb and is most similar to standard Slovene. The *ča* dialect used to be widespread throughout Dalmatia but is now confined to the islands and the Istrian Peninsula. It displays traces of Italian influence in some of its words and its continuing existence in Istria reinforces the strong sense of local identity evident there. The *što* dialect is the most widely spoken and was singled out as the basis for the linguistic reforms of the 19th century. These reforms were intended to bring a sense of unity at a time when Croatian spelling and pronunciation varied greatly from region to region. Renewed interest in political freedom sparked a concern for national cultural identity. The Illyrian Movement, led by Ljudevit Gaj, was active in the 1830s and 40s. Its members proposed a series of changes to codify Croatian grammar and to produce an alphabet system compliant to the demands of the spoken language. They introduced accents above certain letters to represent a greater range of sounds. A description of these letters as used today follows below. The reforms of the Illyrian Movement in the 19th century have evolved into the modern Croatian language presented in this book.

About the book

The book is intended for absolute beginners. By following each section in each unit, you will gradually build up a stock of words and phrases to be used in everyday, practical situations. The central purpose of the book is to teach you how to make

your way around on your own, order meals and drinks, buy travel tickets, read notices and write messages, in short to explain what you want and how to get it.

The emphasis throughout is on functional explanations using straightforward grammatical examples. You will begin with individual words and phrases, and gradually you will be introduced to the patterns of the language which govern their usage. This is, after all, what we mean by grammar. These patterns are given as demonstrations of how you can build your own sentences to use in other situations in which you might find yourself. Do not worry if you have not studied a language before or for some time or if you feel that your last attempt was not as successful as you had hoped it would be. This book offers you units containing graded dialogues and exercises accompanied by a recording to take you through the stages of listening, speaking, reading and writing Croatian.

How to use the book

You will find that each unit is organized in the same way. Each has seven sections:

Dialogue: this is a dialogue which shows you the language in operation in an everyday context and which is followed by a list of the new words and expressions used in the dialogue.

i: this section has notes which explain points about everyday life relevant to the dialogue.

True or false?: this gives statements about the dialogue which are either true or false for you to check that you have understood it.

Key phrases: this is a summary of the most important words and expressions used in the dialogue.

How it works: this section is full of notes which explain why phrases mean what they do and which show you how to create your own sentences.

Practice: these are for you to practise the new information about the language and new words as you acquire them.

Comprehension: this is either another dialogue, or a dialogue and a text, with questions, designed to extend your comprehension of the language.

The last two units are slightly different as they give you exercises to revise phrases and language patterns studied earlier.

Teach Yourself Croatian follows the story of an English couple, Mark and Sandra Bryant, who come to Zagreb. Mark is working for a company wanting to expand its business contacts in the region. Mark and Sandra become friends with Mark's business contact, Rudolf Šimunić, and his girlfriend, Jasna Kušan. You will trace their outings together, their conversations and their holiday together, and see them in different practical situations: in restaurants, shopping, arranging accommodation, changing money, contacting a doctor, conducting business, and so on. You will also find other situations and characters in the **Comprehension** section of each unit.

There is no one way of learning a language. We all have our favourite techniques. As you progress through the book you will discover which methods suit you best. Exploit these as your strengths.

The first steps in learning a language are always important. They provide essential and basic information which you will continue to need. It is also better to look at the book every day rather than try to cram all your study in to one day at the weekend.

Go through each section of each unit in turn. Read the dialogue, and if you have the recording which accompanies this course listen to the dialogue and repeat each phrase until you feel that you have mastered the pronunciation. Study the **i** section and then test your knowledge of the **Dialogue** by attempting the **True or false?** questions. Once you have understood the passage learn the **Key phrases** and the **How it works** section before moving to the **Practice** section. The **Comprehension** at the end of each unit develops the vocabulary and phrases which you have learnt in the unit to help reinforce your knowledge of them and to extend your stock of words and expressions.

Give yourself time for revision, and don't give up at the first sign of difficulty. What may seem complicated the first time you see it will become second nature to you by the end of the course.

Pronunciation and reading

Croatian is an easy language to spell and pronounce. Each letter is pronounced separately, and each word is spelt as it is pronounced. The alphabet has 30 letters. Here the capital letters are listed and their lower case letters are in brackets.

A	(a)	G	(g)	O	(o)
B	(b)	H	(h)	P	(p)
C	(c)	I	(i)	R	(r)
Č	(č)	J	(j)	S	(s)
Ć	(ć)	K	(k)	Š	(š)
D	(d)	L	(l)	T	(t)
Dž	(dž)	Lj	(lj)	U	(u)
Đ	(đ)	M	(m)	V	(v)
E	(e)	N	(n)	Z	(z)
F	(f)	Nj	(nj)	Ž	(ž)

Dž, lj and nj are combinations of other letters but are regarded as single letters for pronunciation and dictionary purposes. Some letters are formed with the help of accents and other markings. These are č, ć, đ, š and ž. As you will see this gives Croatian the advantage of having each letter represent one sound:

- č like the ‘ch’ in *church* but raise your tongue towards the roof of your mouth.
- ć like the ‘ch’ in *church* but put your tongue behind your top front teeth.
- dž like the ‘j’ in *judge* but raise your tongue towards the roof of your mouth.
- đ like the ‘j’ in *judge* but put your tongue behind your top front teeth.
- š like the ‘sh’ in *shoe*.
- ž like the ‘s’ in *pleasure*.

Others to watch for are:

- c always pronounced like ‘ts’ in *cats* (never as ‘k’ or ‘s’).
- g always pronounced like ‘g’ in *goat*.
- h pronounced in the throat like the ‘ch’ in Scottish *loch*.
- j always pronounced like ‘y’ in *you*.
- lj sounds like ‘ll’ in the middle of *million*.
- nj sounds like ‘ni’ in the middle of *onion*.
- r is always trilled as is sometimes found in Scotland and commonly in other languages such as German or Spanish; it is never pronounced in the throat as in French. The letter ‘r’ is sometimes sandwiched between two consonants and used as a vowel, e.g. *hrvatski Croatian*.

The pronunciation of the remaining consonants is similar to their English equivalents: **b d f k l m n p s t v z**

Vowel sounds are pure and tend to be shorter than in English:

- a as in *hat* but shorter.
- e as in *bell*.
- i like the 'ea' in *meat* but shorter.
- o as in northern English *not* but with rounder lips.
- u like the 'oo' in English *moon* but shorter and with rounder lips.

Finally, take care with the following combinations:

- aj as the vowel sound in *night*.
- ej as the vowel sound in *late*.
- oj as the vowel sound in *boy*.

Other letters: you meet foreign letters such as x and y in the spelling of foreign names, place names and so on.

Read, or listen to, these words, which exemplify Croatian pronunciation.

adresa	<i>address</i>	limun	<i>lemon</i>
banka	<i>bank</i>	ljeto	<i>summer</i>
centar	<i>centre</i>	marka	<i>stamp</i>
čaj	<i>tea</i>	noć	<i>night</i>
ići	<i>to go</i>	Njemačka	<i>Germany</i>
da	<i>yes</i>	oprostite	<i>excuse me</i>
džep	<i>pocket</i>	park	<i>park</i>
do viđenja	<i>goodbye</i>	restoran	<i>restaurant</i>
Engleska	<i>England</i>	sala	<i>hall</i>
funta	<i>pound</i>	šuma	<i>forest</i>
govorite	<i>you speak</i>	taksi	<i>taxi</i>
hotel	<i>hotel</i>	učitelj	<i>teacher</i>
ili	<i>or</i>	valuta	<i>currency</i>
ja	<i>I</i>	zima	<i>winter</i>
karta	<i>ticket</i>	žena	<i>woman</i>

Stress in Croatian

In Croatian, as in English, one part of a longer word is pronounced more heavily than the others. This part is called the stressed syllable. So you say *lighting* and *concern* where the underlined syllable is pronounced more forcefully than the rest. Also, as in English, there are no rules to govern which part of a word is stressed, except that it is never the last syllable. So, in a

word of two syllables, the first one is always stressed. The stressed syllable is not usually marked in Croatian, but by listening carefully to the recording which accompanies this course you will be able to acquire a good pronunciation. Remember that each part of a word is pronounced without reducing or contracting sounds which often happens at the ends of words in English.

Stress in Croatian is also accompanied by tonal lengths. There are four tones in all, two rising and two falling. However, few speakers these days distinguish between all four tones. There are some instances where a tone difference indicates a different meaning of the word. These are rare occasions. You will master the tones by imitating the sounds as you hear them on the recording. Also, vowels are sometimes pronounced longer than usual. They are not necessarily the stressed syllable, but you will be able to hear them on the recording.

Abbreviations and symbols



This indicates material included on the recording.



This indicates information about everyday life in Croatia.

masc.	masculine	gen.	genitive case
fem.	feminine	nom.	nominative case
neut.	neuter	sing.	singular
acc.	accusative case	ins.	instrumental case
dat.	dative case	voc.	vocative case
Lit.	literally (for a literal translation)	pron.	pronounced

10

u hotelu in the hotel

In this unit you will learn how to

- **form basic statements and questions**
- **introduce yourself and others**
- **identify yourself and ask others their identity**
- **say which languages you speak**
- **use words and expressions in greeting**

▶ Dialogue

Rudolf Šimunić is looking for Mark Bryant and his wife Sandra in their hotel in Zagreb. The Bryants have just arrived. Rudolf is Mark's business contact but they have not met before.

- Rudolf** Oprostite, jeste li vi gospodin Bryant?
Mark Da, jesam. A tko ste vi, gospodine?
Rudolf Ja sam Rudolf Šimunić. Drago mi je.
Mark Drago mi je. Ja sam Mark Bryant.
Rudolf Jeste li vi Englez?
Mark Jesam.
Rudolf Dobro govorite hrvatski.
Mark Hvala. Jeste li vi Hrvat?
Rudolf Jesam.
Mark Govorite li engleski?
Rudolf Govorim malo. Učim engleski.
Mark Da vas upoznam. Ovo je moja žena, Sandra.
Rudolf Drago mi je. Ja sam Rudolf Šimunić.
Sandra Drago mi je. Ja sam Sandra.
Rudolf I vi govorite hrvatski?
Sandra Govorim malo. Učim jezik.

oprostite	<i>excuse me (attracting attention)</i>
Jeste li vi...?	<i>Are you...?</i>
gospodin Bryant	<i>Mr Bryant</i>
da	<i>yes</i>
jesam	<i>I am</i>
A tko ste vi, gospodine?	<i>And who are you, sir?</i>
a	<i>and, but</i>
drago mi je	<i>pleased to meet you</i>
ja sam...	<i>I am...</i>
Englez/Hrvat	<i>Englishman/Croat</i>
Dobro govorite hrvatski.	<i>You speak Croatian well.</i>
hvala	<i>thank you</i>
Govorite li engleski/hrvatski?	<i>Do you speak English/Croatian?</i>
Govorim malo.	<i>I speak a little.</i>
Učim engleski.	<i>I am learning English.</i>
Da vas upoznam.	<i>Let me introduce you.</i>
Ovo je moja žena.	<i>This is my wife.</i>
i	<i>and</i>
I vi govorite hrvatski?	<i>And you speak Croatian (too)?</i>
Učim jezik.	<i>I am studying the language.</i>

Rudolf arranges to meet Mark and Sandra that evening and he brings along his friend, Jasna.

- Mark** Dobra večer, Rudolf. Kako ste?
Rudolf Dobra večer. Ja sam dobro, hvala. A kako ste vi?
Sandra Dobro, hvala.
Rudolf Da vas upoznam. Ovo je moja prijateljica, Jasna.
Sandra Drago mi je. Ja sam Sandra Bryant. Ovo je moj muž, Mark.
Jasna Drago mi je. Ja sam Jasna Kušan.
Mark Drago mi je, gospođice.
Jasna Sandra, jeste li vi Engleskinja?
Sandra Jesam. A vi ste Hrvatica?
Jasna Jesam. Razumijete li hrvatski?
Sandra Razumijem dosta, ali slabo govorim.

Dobra večer. *Good evening.*

Kako ste? *How are you?*

Dobro. *Fine.*

Ovo je moja prijateljica. *This is my (female) friend.*

Ovo je moj muž. *This is my husband.*

gospođice *Miss*

Jeste li vi Engleskinja? *Are you (an) English(woman)?*

A vi ste Hrvatica? *And you're a Croat(ian) woman)?*

Razumijete li...? *Do you understand...?*

Razumijem dosta. *I understand a lot.*

ali *but*

slabo *not much (Lit. weakly)*

True or false?

- a Mark speaks Croatian well.
 b Rudolf is studying English.
 c Jasna is Rudolf's wife.

i Meeting people

When meeting people for the first time it is customary to shake hands and repeat the formula as in the dialogue – **drago mi je** – and say your name. This manner avoids the old English necessity of your host repeating your name to each new person you meet.

Mr Bryant

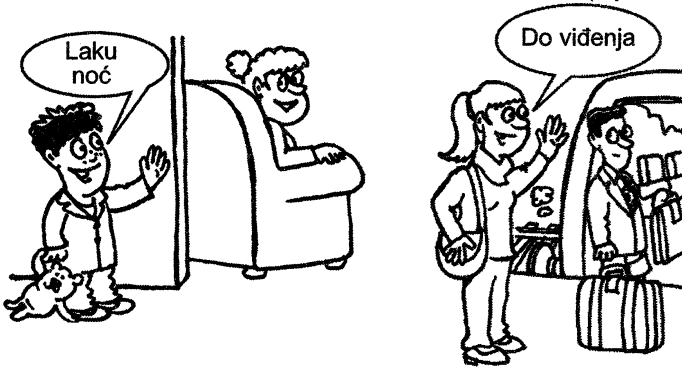
The word **gospodin** *Mr* is spelt with a small letter except at the beginning of a sentence. Other common titles are **gospođa** *Mrs* and **gospođica** *Miss*. They are abbreviated in writing to **g.**, **gđa.** and **gđica**. In the dialogue when **gospodin** and **gospođica** are used to address someone directly they change slightly at the end of the word, and you have the forms **gospodine** and **gospođice**. There are a number of patterns which affect the ends of words.

In these early stages be aware that you will come across a few examples where a word will appear with a slight variation. You will gradually learn the rules which govern these changes.

Greeting people

When greeting people the following formulas are used, depending on the time of day:





dobro jutro *good morning* until about 10 a.m.
 dobar dan *good day* until late afternoon
 dobra večer *good evening*

The word **večer** is used to refer to the time until midnight. The phrases used when parting are:

do viđenja *goodbye*

laku noć *good night*

These are somewhat formal and polite expressions. In more colloquial circumstances people use **zdravo** when both greeting and parting from people. In Zagreb, **bog** is said as a very colloquial expression meaning 'bye or cheerio.

▶ Key phrases

How to:

- ask who people are. Tko ste vi?
Jeste li vi...?
- say who you are. Ja sam...
- ask how someone is. Kako ste?
- reply that you are fine. Ja sam dobro.
- ask what language people speak, or understand. Govorite li...
Razumijete li...
Govorim...
Razumijem...
- respond when being introduced. Drago mi je. Ja sam...
- introduce others. Da vas upoznam. Ove je...
- respond when meeting people –
 - ... in the morning. Dobro jutro.
 - ... in the afternoon. Dobar dan.
 - ... in the evening. Dobra večer.
- say goodbye. do viđenja/laku noć.

How it works

The, a or an

Croatian does not have separate words for *the* and *a*. So, the title of the unit **U hotelu** may mean either *In the hotel* or *In a hotel* depending on the context. The lack of such words strikes the English ear as odd at first, but you soon get used to speaking without them.

I and you

The words *ja I* and *vi you* are rarely used. They tend to be omitted unless asking a direct, personal question or if emphasis is required.

I am and you are

In Croatian there are two forms for saying *I am* and *you are*:

ja sam	<i>I am</i>
ja jesam	
vi ste	<i>you are</i>
vi jeste	

The first one in both examples is called the 'short form', and the other is called the 'long form'. The main difference is that the short form (**sam, ste**) is never used as the first word of a sentence or phrase. The long form is used for:

- a emphasis;
- b for giving one word answers to questions;
- c to ask questions.

Compare the following:

Ja sam Mark Bryant.	<i>I am Mark Bryant.</i>
Ja sam Englez.	<i>I am English.</i>
Jeste li vi Mark Bryant?	<i>Are you Mark Bryant?</i>
Jesam.	<i>I am.</i>

When *ja* or *vi* are omitted word order is affected. Compare the following:

Kako ste?	<i>How are you?</i>
Ja sam dobro, hvala.	<i>I am well, thank you.</i>
or	
Dobro sam, hvala.	<i>I am well, thank you.</i>

I speak / you speak

Ja and vi are largely unnecessary because the end of each verb (verbs are words which express actions) tells you who is performing the action. These verbs form regular patterns. Note the difference at the ends of the verbs:

govorim
govorite

I speak
you speak

You can see and hear the same differences at the ends of the other verbs used in the dialogue:

razumijem
razumijete

I understand
you understand

učim
učite

I study
you study

There is only one form of each verb in the present tense, so that *govorim* means *I speak*, *I am speaking* and *I do speak*.

Statements and questions

Compare the following constructions to see the difference between a statement and a question:

Statement

Govorim hrvatski.

I speak Croatian.

Razumijem engleski.

I understand English.

Question

Govorite li hrvatski?

Do you speak Croatian?

Razumijete li engleski?

Do you understand English?

If you include the word *vi* in the question, then the word order is as follows:

Govorite li *vi* hrvatski?

Razumijete li *vi* engleski?

A question is made by putting *li* after the verb and before *vi*. A question can also be made by putting *da li* in front of the verb:

Da li govorite hrvatski?

Do you speak Croatian?

Da li razumijete engleski?

Do you understand English?

Another type of question involves the use of an interrogative word, for example:

Tko ste vi?

Who are you?

Categories of nouns (gender)

All nouns (words which name things) in Croatian belong to one of three categories called genders: masculine, feminine and neuter. The gender of a noun can usually be recognized by its ending.

Masculine nouns end in consonants:

Englez

Englishman

jezik

language

muž

husband

Feminine nouns end in -a:

Engleskinja

Englishwoman

žena

wife

prijateljica

friend (female)

Neuter nouns end in -o or -e:

pero

pen

more

sea

There are some smaller groups which do not conform to these patterns such as *večer evening* which is a feminine noun although it ends in a consonant. The names of the categories are not always associated with biological gender (what is masculine about a language?) but where they are you will usually find that words are paired: e.g. *prijateljica* (female friend, feminine category), *prijatelj* (male friend, masculine category).

There are two other words to mean husband and wife which are more formal terms than the ones used in the dialogue. These are: *suprug* (*husband*, masc. category); *supruga* (*wife*, fem. category).

My and your

My and *your* are called possessive adjectives because they describe the possession of an object. In common with all adjectives (words which describe objects) in Croatian and in many other languages their ending changes according to the gender of the noun. We say that the adjective agrees with the noun.

Masculine adjectives end in a consonant, and feminine adjectives add -a:

Ovo je moj muž. *This is my husband.*
 Ovo je moja žena. *This is my wife.*

The corresponding word for *your* is *vaš*:

Ovo je vaš hotel. *This is your hotel.*
 Ovo je vaša sekretarica. *This is your secretary.*

▶ Languages and nationalities

Languages are spelt with a small letter: **hrvatski** *Croatian language*.

Nationalities and inhabitants of countries take a capital letter: **Hrvat** *Croatian man*, **Hrvatica** *Croatian woman*.

There are two different forms to denote a person by their nationality, one for men and one for women. Other examples of language and nationality are:

Language		Nationality
srpski	<i>Serbian</i>	Srbin/Srpkinja
slovenski	<i>Slovenian</i>	Slovenac/Slovenka
makedonski	<i>Macedonian</i>	Makedonac/Makedonka
engleski	<i>English</i>	Englez/Engleskinja
francuski	<i>French</i>	Francuz/Francuskinja
njemački	<i>German</i>	Nijemac/Njemica
ruski	<i>Russian</i>	Rus/Ruskinja

Practice

1 Unscramble the following letters to form words:

- a etajipricalj
- b bardo reveč
- c stroopite

2 Look at the information that Mark gives about himself below.

Ja sam Mark Bryant. Ja sam Englez. Govorim engleski.

Make up similar sentences for:

- a Jasna
- b Rudolf
- c Sandra
- d yourself

3 Look at the following dialogue.

Jasna Tko ste vi?

Metka Ja sam Metka. Ja sam Slovenka.

Jasna Govorite li slovenski?

Metka Da, govorim slovenski.

Repeat the dialogue using the following names (say what you think their likely nationalities and languages are):

a Hans

b Pierre

c Ivan

4 You are introduced to someone. Ask them if they speak:

a English

b French

c Croatian

d Serbian

▶ 5 What would you say to greet someone ...

a in the early part of the morning?

b in the afternoon?

c in the evening?

d How would you say goodbye?

▶ 6 Fill in the missing part of the following dialogue:

Dobra večer.

Good evening. How are you?

Dobro, hvala. Da vas upoznam. Ovo je moj muž.

Pleased to meet you. I am...

Drago mi je. Ja sam Velimir.

Good night.

Laku noć.

7 Rudolf introduces Jasna:

Da vas upoznam. Ovo je Jasna. Jasna je moja prijateljica.

Make up introductions such as:

a Sandra introduces Mark.

b Mark introduces Sandra.

► Comprehension

Earlier that day Jasna went to work. She met her boss, g. Kovač, in the corridor as she arrived. She met him again later in the day as he was showing a friend of his from another company around the office. Jasna works as a secretary (*sekretarica*).

Ujutro *In the morning*

- G. Kovač** Dobro jutro. Kako ste gospođice Kušan?
Jasna Dobro sam, hvala gospodine. A kako ste vi?
G. Kovač I ja sam dobro, hvala. Do viđenja.
Jasna Do viđenja, gospodine Kovaču.

Kasnije poslije podne *Later that afternoon*

- G. Kovač** Ah, ovo je Jasna Kušan, moja sekretarica. Dobar dan Jasna. Da vas upoznam. Ovo je moj prijatelj, gospodin Marinković.
Jasna Drago mi je, gospodine Marinkoviću. Ja sam Jasna Kušan.
G. Marinković Drago mi je.

True or false?

- a Jasna does not feel well in the morning.
b Jasna is Mr Kovač's secretary.
c Mr Kovač introduces Jasna to his friend.

NOTE that the surnames of Mr Kovač and Mr Marinković change when they are addressed directly as does the word *gospodin* (see *Mr Bryant* on page 4).

02

u kavani in the café

In this unit you will learn how to

- say what you want or like
- ask others what they want or like
- ask what others want to drink
- give and ask for personal information
- say *in* and *to*
- make negative statements

▶ Dialogue

Now that Rudolf and Jasna have met the Bryants, they invite Mark and Sandra for a drink in the hotel.

- Rudolf** Gdje živite, vi i Sandra?
Mark Živimo u Londonu.
Rudolf Da li volite živjeti u Londonu?
Mark Da, volimo tamo živjeti. Volimo London.
Rudolf Što želite popiti?
Mark Žedan sam. Ja bih pivo, hvala.
Rudolf Jasna, da li si žedna?
Jasna Nisam. Što želite popiti, Sandra?
Sandra Ja bih kavu, hvala.
Jasna Da... kava je ovdje veoma dobra. I vino je dobro. Ja bih vino, Rudolf.
Rudolf U redu. Ti želiš vino, Jasna, a vi želite kavu, Sandra.

Gdje živite?	<i>Where do you live?</i>
živimo	<i>we live</i>
u Londonu	<i>in London</i>
Da li volite...?	<i>Do you like...?</i>
živjeti	<i>to live</i>
volimo	<i>we like (or love)</i>
tamo	<i>there</i>
Što želite...	<i>What do you want...</i>
popiti	<i>to drink</i>
Žedan sam.	<i>I am thirsty (male speaking).</i>
Ja bih...	<i>I would like...</i>
pivo	<i>beer</i>
Da li si žedna?	<i>Are you thirsty? (to a female)</i>
Nisam.	<i>I am not.</i>
Ja bih kavu.	<i>I would like a coffee.</i>
Kava je veoma dobra.	<i>The coffee is very good.</i>
ovdje	<i>here</i>
Vino je dobro.	<i>The wine is good.</i>
u redu	<i>OK, all right</i>
ti želiš	<i>you want</i>
vi želite	<i>you want</i>

They order their drinks from the waiter and continue chatting.

- Jasna** Volite li živjeti u Londonu, Sandra?
Sandra Ne, ne volim živjeti u Londonu, ali radim tamo.
Jasna Što radite?

- Sandra** Radim u školi. Ja sam učiteljica. Radim kao učiteljica.
Jasna Ja radim kao sekretarica u Zagrebu.
Sandra Živate li u gradu?
Jasna Ne, ne živim u gradu. Živim u predgrađu. Idem u grad na posao. Kamo vi idete?
Sandra Idem u školu. Moja škola je u gradu.
Jasna Rudolf, ideš li sutra u grad?
Rudolf Da, idem.

ne	<i>no</i>
ne volim...	<i>I do not like...</i>
radim	<i>I work, I do</i>
Što radite?	<i>What do you do?</i>
u školi	<i>in school</i>
učiteljica	<i>teacher (female)</i>
kao	<i>as</i>
u gradu	<i>in town</i>
u predgrađu	<i>in a suburb</i>
idem u grad	<i>I go to town</i>
na posao	<i>to work (to my job)</i>
Kamo vi idete?	<i>Where do you go?</i>
u školu	<i>to school</i>
moja škola je...	<i>my school is...</i>
Ideš li...?	<i>Are you going...?</i>
sutra	<i>tomorrow</i>

True or false?

- a Mark does not like living in London.
 b Jasna is thirsty.
 c Rudolf is going to town tomorrow.

i You

In common with many other European languages, Croatian has two words for *you*. They are **ti** and **vi**. The **ti** form is used among friends, relations, to children and is generally recognized as an informal mode of address. It is only used when referring to one person. The **vi** form is always used when referring to more than one person. It is also a more formal and polite form, used to a boss at work or to a stranger.

Do not try to use **ti** to someone thinking that you are just being friendly. The conventions for choosing the correct form depend on social factors which you might not recognize. You could cause great offence. Rudolf uses **ti** when he speaks to Jasna, but **vi** when he

speaks to Mark or Sandra. Always let the Croat to whom you are speaking be the first to use the **ti** form. It is, however, common for teenagers and students to use the **ti** form within their own age group.

Drinks

People might drop in at a **kavana** for a drink. The usual system is to find a table and wait for the waiter to come and take your order – which might be **kava**, **pivo**, **vino**, **sok** *fruit juice* or a **rakija** *brandy*. You could try asking for **čaj** *tea*, but you might get the herbal variety. In some of the trendy cafés in Zagreb, and on the coast you might find a bar with something like counter service as in a pub. These are usually small places, called a **kafić**. You can also buy snacks in some, and even proper meals. The usual place for a meal would be a **restoran** *restaurant*, in many of which a small area is often set aside for customers who only want a drink. On a train or at a station look for the **bife** *buffet*.

▶ Key phrases

How to:

- | | |
|--|---|
| • ask what someone wants to drink. | Što želite popiti? |
| • respond when offered a drink. | Ja bih kavu.
Ja bih pivo.
Ja bih vino. |
| • ask where someone lives. | Gdje živite? |
| • respond when asked where you live. | Živim/Živimo u Londonu
(u Zagrebu, u gradu,
u predgrađu). |
| • ask if someone likes to do something. | Da li volite... or
Volite li... |
| • respond that you do like something, or that you do not like something. | Da, volim...
Ne, ne volim. |
| • ask what someone does for a living. | Što radite? |
| • say what you do for a living. | Radim kao... |
| • ask where someone is going. | Kamo ideš? |
| • respond when asked where you are going. | Idem u grad (u školu,
na posao). |
| • say that something is here, or there. | Kava je ovdje dobra.
Ne volim tamo živjeti. |

How it works

You and we

The two new words for referring to people in this unit are *ti you* and *mi we*. They are rarely used except for emphasis. The ending of the verb changes according to the following pattern:

<i>ti voliš</i>	<i>you like/love</i>
<i>mi volimo</i>	<i>we like/love</i>

<i>ti ideš</i>	<i>you go</i>
<i>mi idemo</i>	<i>we go</i>

These endings can be added to the other verbs which you have met so far:

<i>ti govoriš</i>	<i>you speak</i>
<i>mi razumijemo</i>	<i>we understand</i>

Here is the exception:

<i>ti si</i> (<i>jesi – long form</i>)	<i>you are</i>
<i>mi smo</i> (<i>jesmo – long form</i>)	<i>we are</i>

I like to live in... (infinitive)

You have met verbs in one of two ways, either with a person (*I like, you work*, etc.) or as an infinitive (*to live, to drink*, etc.). The infinitive usually follows a verb with a person (*I like to live in London*). In English the infinitive is two words, but in Croatian it is one word:

<i>živjeti</i>	<i>to live</i>
<i>popiti</i>	<i>to drink</i>

Once you know both the infinitive and the *ja* parts of the verb you will be able to produce any form of a verb. You can recognize the other infinitives from the parts of the verb you already know:

govorim	govoriti	<i>to speak</i>
razumijem	razumjeti	<i>to understand</i>
učim	učiti	<i>to study</i>
radim	raditi	<i>to do, work</i>
volim	voljeti	<i>to like, love</i>
želim	željeti	<i>to want</i>

There are one or two exceptions: e.g. **ja sam** – *biti to be*. Most infinitives end in **-ti** but some end in **-ći**: e.g. **idem** – *ići (to go)*. You can find more verbs in the lists of new words following the **Dialogue** with their infinitives and **ja** forms.

I do not like (negation)

To say that you are not doing something (to negate a verb) simply place **ne** before the verb:

Ne volim živjeti u Londonu. *I do not like to live in London.*
 Ne želimo popiti pivo. *We do not want a drink of beer.*

The verb **biti** as usual provides an exception. The pattern which means *I am not*, etc. is all one word:

nisam	<i>I am not</i>	nismo	<i>we are not</i>
nisi	<i>you are not</i>	niste	<i>you are not (plural)</i>

Thirsty/hungry (adjectives)

Adjectives change their endings like nouns: e.g. Mark says **žedan sam** *I am thirsty* while Sandra says **žedna sam**.

Masculine adjectives end in a consonant.

Feminine adjectives end in **-a**.

Neuter adjectives end in **-o**.

There is a rule of spelling and pronunciation that after certain consonants you write and say **e** instead of **o**. These are called soft consonants, and they are **c, č, ć, dž, đ, j, lj, nj, š** and **ž**.

If there is the letter **a** between the final two consonants it is omitted when you add the ending for feminine and neuter:

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
dobar	dobra	dobro
žedan	žedna	žedno
gladan (<i>hungry</i>)	gladna	gladno
moj	moja	moje

Possessive adjectives

The two possessive adjectives relevant to this unit are:

tvoj
naš

your (correspond to **ti**)
our (correspond to **mi**)

Ovo je moja kava.

This is my coffee.

Ovo je tvoje pivo.

This is your beer.

Ovo je naš grad.

This is our town.

Ovo je vaša žena.

This is your wife. (someone to whom you would normally use the **vi** form).

In/to

Croatian uses the same word to mean both *in* and *to*: **u**.

The difference between the two meanings is indicated at the end of the noun. Compare the following two sentences:

Idem **u** grad.

I go to town. (motion)

Ja sam **u** gradu.

I am in town. (stationary)

Idem **u** školu.

I go to school.

Ja sam **u** školi.

I am in school.

Words like **u** which relate two things together, often in a spatial way as in these examples, are called prepositions. Different prepositions require different endings. The endings indicate what are called the cases of the noun. Here there are examples of two cases: the accusative (acc.) and the dative (dat.) case. (In some grammar books this use of the dative after **u** is sometimes referred to as the locative case. However, given that the locative and dative case endings are always the same we have continued them under the dative heading in this book.) They follow the patterns below:

Masc. (e.g. grad)

acc.

grad (no change)

dat.

gradu (add -u)

Fem. (e.g. škola)

acc.

školu (change -a to -u)

dat.

školi (change -a to -i)

Neut. (e.g. predgrađe)

acc.

predgrađe (no change)

dat.

predgrađu (change -e/-o to -u)

The acc. after **u** indicates being in motion.
The dat. after **u** indicates being stationary.

Study the following examples:

Da li živiš u Londonu?	<i>Do you live in London?</i>
Idemo u London.	<i>We are going to London.</i>
Ne idem u kavanu.	<i>I am not going to the café.</i>
Mi smo u kavani.	<i>We are in the café.</i>
Idete li u predgrađe?	<i>Are you going to the suburb?</i>
Nisam u predgrađu.	<i>I am not in the suburb.</i>

Croatian has two ways of asking *where?*:

Gdje živite?	<i>Where do you live?</i>
Kamo idete?	<i>Where are you going?</i>

Gdje asks where something is (being stationary).
Kamo asks to where something goes (being in motion).
In answering a question with **gdje** you use dat.
In answering a question with **kamo** you use acc.

Other ways of saying to

You have seen that **na** can also mean *to* in the expression:

Idem na posao.	<i>I am to going to work.</i>
----------------	-------------------------------

The word **na** usually means *on* but is also used with certain nouns where you would not say *on* in English, such as with the word **pošta** *post office* and **kolodvor** *station* and in some idioms:

Ja sam na pošti.	<i>I am in the post office.</i>
Idem na kolodvor.	<i>I am going to the station.</i>
Idemo na kavu.	<i>We are going for a coffee.</i>
Ideš li na pivo?	<i>Are you going for a beer?</i>

The acc. after **na** indicates being in motion.
The dat. after **na** indicates being stationary.

Unusual noun categories

Somewhere and somehow there are always words in any language which do not behave like most of the others. For example most masculine nouns end in a consonant. **Posao** *job, work*, however, is a masculine noun. Centuries ago the **-o** at the end was an **-l**, but with time its pronunciation was softened into this vowel sound. When you add case endings the old **'l'** returns to replace the **'o'**.

Posao also has that **-a** before the last letter which disappears as soon as you add a different ending to the word (think of **dobar dan** and the change to **dobro jutro**). The pattern of its changes looks like this:

acc.	posao
dat.	poslu

Practice

▶ 1 Answer the following questions: positively, negatively.

- e.g. Volite li pivo?
Volim. Ne volim.
- a Volite li kavu?
 - b Govorite li engleski?
 - c Jeste li vi Englez?
 - d Volite li London?
 - e Želite li živjeti u Londonu?
 - f Želite li ići u grad?
 - g Volite li ići na posao?
 - h Idete li na kavu?

2 Change all the questions in Question 1 to the **ti** form of the verb.

3 Find the two correct forms of the verbs in the lists on the right to match the personal pronouns on the left:

- | | | |
|---|----|-------------------------------------|
| a | ja | si, sam, razumijete, govorimo, učim |
| b | ti | želiš, želite, ideš, razumijem |
| c | mi | živim, razumijemo, učimo, volite |
| d | vi | ste, smo, učite, učimo |

4 Put the noun in brackets below into the correct case.

Kamo ideš, Rudolf?

- a Idem u (grad).
- b Idem u (kavana).
- c Idem u (škola).
- d Idem u (Zagreb).
- e Idem na (posao).
- f Idem na (kava).

Gdje je Jasna?

- g Jasna je u (grad).
- h Jasna je u (London).

- i Jasna je u (škola).
j Jasna je na (posao).
k Jasna je u (kavana).
l Jasna je u (predgrađe).

5 Put the verbs and nouns in brackets into the correct forms:

e.g. (ići – ti) u (grad)
Ideš u grad.

- a (željeti – mi) živjeti u (London).
b (željeti – ja) živjeti u (Zagreb).
c (ići – ti) na (kava).
d (živjeti – ja) u (grad).
e (živjeti – mi) u (predgrađe).
f (voljeti – vi) biti na (posao).

6 Match the following questions with the appropriate responses:

- | | | | |
|---|----------------------|-----|--------------------------|
| a | Kamo idete? | i | Ja bih kavu. |
| b | Gdje želite živjeti? | ii | Idem u grad. |
| c | Što želite popiti? | iii | Radim kao učiteljica. |
| d | Što radite? | iv | Želim živjeti u Londonu. |

7 Put the adjectives in brackets into the correct form:

e.g. Jasna je (gladan).
Jasna je gladna.

- a (dobar) večer.
b Sandra je (žedan).
c Ovo je (naš) predgrađe.
d Mark je (vaš) muž.
e Ovo je (moj) (dobar) prijateljica.
f Ovo je (tvoj) kavana.
g Rudolf je (gladan).

► Comprehension

Two friends, Velimir and Zvonko, are chatting about Velimir's new flat.

- Zvonko** Gdje živiš?
Velimir Živim u gradu.
Zvonko Kako to? Imaš stan u predgrađu.
Velimir Imam nov stan u gradu.
Zvonko Voliš li živjeti u gradu?

Velimir Volim. Moj posao je u gradu.
Zvonko Ideš li sutra na posao?
Velimir Idem. Volim ići na posao.
Zvonko Gdje radiš?
Velimir Radim u školi.
Zvonko Što radiš?
Velimir Sada radim kao učitelj.

Kako to? *How come?*

imaš *you have*

imam *I have*

nov stan *a new flat*

posao *job (work)*

sada *now*

učitelj *teacher (masc.)*

True or false?

- a Velimir has a new flat.
- b Velimir has a job in the suburbs.
- c Velimir has a new job as a bus conductor.

30

u gradu in town

In this unit you will learn how to

- express basic directions
- ask where something is
- say where something is in relation to something else
- say other expressions useful in getting about a town
- express *can* and *have to*

▶ Dialogue

Rudolf and Jasna have invited the Bryants to join them for a trip into the town. This is the first time the Bryants have had the opportunity to see something of Zagreb. Their Croatian friends call at their hotel.

- Rudolf** Dobar dan, Mark. Dobar dan, Sandra. Kako ste?
Mark Dobro smo, hvala. A, kako ste vi?
Rudolf I ja sam dobro.
Mark Gdje je Jasna?
Rudolf Ona dolazi. Parkira auto ispred hotela. Evo Jasne, sada možemo ići u grad.

Ona dolazi. (dolaziti, dolazim)	<i>She is coming.</i>
Parkira auto. (parkirati, parkiram)	<i>She (or he) is parking the car.</i>
ispred hotela	<i>in front of the hotel</i>
Evo Jasne.	<i>Here is Jasna.</i>
sada	<i>now</i>
možemo (moći, mogu – irregular verb)	<i>we can, we may, we are able</i>

From here onwards you will find both the infinitive and **ja** forms of new verbs. (You can recognize the infinitive by the ending, and it is followed by the **ja** form.)

Sandra and Jasna walk and chat together. Rudolf and Mark walk ahead.

- Sandra** Gdje smo sada?
Jasna Na desno je Esplanade. To je dobar hotel. Na lijevo je Glavni kolodvor. Sada idemo ravno u centar grada. Vidite li tamo veliku zgradu? Da... Rudolf tamo radi. Njegov ured je u zgradi.
Sandra A što je tamo ispred kolodvora?
Jasna To je park. U parku je spomenik. Ovo je lijep kraj grada.
Sandra Da, lijep je. Gdje su Mark i Rudolf?
Jasna Vidim Rudolfa blizu spomenika. I Mark je tamo ispod drveta.
Sandra Što rade?
Jasna Gledaju spomenik.

na desno	<i>on the right</i>
To je Hotel Esplanade.	<i>That is the Esplanade hotel.</i>
na lijevo	<i>on the left</i>
Glavni kolodvor	<i>Main Station</i>

ići ravno	<i>to go straight on</i>
centar grada	<i>the centre of town</i>
vidite (vidjeti, vidim)	<i>you see (vi form)</i>
veliku zgradu	<i>large building (acc.)</i>
njegov ured	<i>his office</i>
ispred kolodvora	<i>in front of the station</i>
park	<i>park</i>
spomenik	<i>monument</i>
lijep kraj grada	<i>a nice part of town</i>
Gdje su...?	<i>Where are...?</i>
Vidim Rudolfa.	<i>I see Rudolf.</i>
blizu spomenika	<i>near the monument</i>
ispod drveta	<i>under the tree</i>
Što rade?	<i>What are they doing?</i>
Gledaju spomenik. (gledati, gledam)	<i>They are looking at the monument.</i>

Mark	Kamo idemo sada?
Rudolf	Idemo na Jelačićev trg, a onda u Gornji grad.
Mark	Gdje je pošta? Moram kupiti marke i kovertе. Jesu li skupe?
Rudolf	Ne, nisu skupe. Pošta nije daleko od trga. Možemo tamo otići kasnije.

Jelačićev trg	<i>Jelačić Square</i>
a onda	<i>and then, next</i>
Gornji grad	<i>Upper Town</i>
pošta	<i>post office</i>
moram... (morati)	<i>I have to...</i>
kupiti (kupim)	<i>to buy</i>
marke	<i>stamps (acc. plural)</i>
kovertе	<i>envelopes (acc. plural)</i>
Jesu li skupe?	<i>Are they expensive?</i>
nisu	<i>they are not</i>
Nije daleko od trga.	<i>It is not far from the square.</i>
otići	<i>to go on to, to go away</i>
kasnije	<i>later</i>

True or false?

- Jasna is coming to the hotel by bus.
- The Esplanade is a good hotel.
- The post office is near the main square.

i Zagreb

Zagreb is the capital city of Croatia. It is the cultural, political and industrial centre of the region. Parts of **Gornji grad** *Upper Town* date from the medieval period. **Gornji grad** is aptly named as it sits on top of a hill overlooking the modern centre, much of which was constructed in the last century when Zagreb was a provincial capital in the Hapsburg Empire. After the Second World War the city was the capital of the Republic of Croatia within the Yugoslav Federation, and from the beginning of 1992 has been the capital of the independent state of Croatia. It has a population of about one million.

Gornji grad

The Upper Town has no bus or tram services as the streets are too narrow and such modern conveniences would spoil this old part of town. The area is well known for its small squares with their restaurants and cafés. It can be reached on foot from **Jelačićev trg** through the old streets which twist their way uphill. There is also a funicular railway which can be found not far from **Jelačićev trg** along one of the main streets called **Ilica**.

Use of capital letters

Note that in Croatian the names of places, whether names of towns or areas in a town, are spelt with a capital letter. If there is more than one word, the second word is spelt with a small letter as in the following examples:

Glavni kolodvor
Jelačićev trg
Gornji grad

▶ Key phrases

How to:

- say that something is on the left, **Ovo je na lijevo.**
or on the right. **Ovo je na desno.**
- say 'We're going straight on'. **Idemo ravno.**
- say where things are –
in front of (the hotel) **ispred (hotela)**
near (the monument) **blizu (spomenika)**
under (the tree) **ispod (drveta)**
not far from (the square) **nije daleko od (trga)**

- say *this is (a nice part of town)*, *Ovo je (lijep kraj grada).*
or that is (a good hotel). *To je (dobar hotel).*
- express *(we) can (go now)*, *sada možemo (ići)*
and (I) must (buy). *moram (kupiti)...*
(both verbs are followed by the infinitive of what *can* or *must*
be done)
- announce that someone is here. *Evo Jasne.*

How it works

He/she/it and they

In this unit you have learnt the final parts of the verb in the present tense. They express *he/she/it does* or *they do*. The words for the pronouns (*he*, etc.) are as follows:

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
singular	on	ona	ono
plural	oni	one	ona

Unlike in English, there are three forms of the plural (*they*), and the pronouns may be used to refer to both people and things depending on the gender of the noun which they are replacing as in these examples:

Spomenik (masc.) je u parku. On je u parku. Oni su u parku.	<i>The monument is in the park. It is in the park. They (monuments) are in in the park.</i>
Zgrada (fem.) je na trgu. Ona je na trgu. One su na trgu.	<i>The building is on the square. It is on the square. They (buildings) are on the square.</i>
Kazalište (neut.) je u gradu. Ono je u gradu. Ona su u gradu.	<i>The theatre is in the town. It is in the town. They (theatres) are in the town.</i>
Rudolf je ovdje a Jasna je tamo. On je ovdje a ona je tamo. Oni su na lijevo a one su na desno.	<i>Rudolf is here and Jasna is there. He is here and she is there. They (men) are on the left and they (women) are on the right.</i>

When you are talking about two things, one masculine and one feminine, the masculine forms are used:

Spomenik i zgrada su u parku. *The monument and the building are in the park.*
Oni su u parku. *They are in the park.*

Verbal forms and categories

Now that you have all the parts of the verb you can see the complete pattern of endings in the present tense. There are just three standard types of ending depending on the vowel which occurs immediately before the **-m** of the **ja** form:

- a i type (dolazim)
- b e type (idem)
- c a type (gledam)

dolaziti to come

ja	dolazim	mi	dolazimo
ti	dolaziš	vi	dolazite
on/a/o	dolazi	oni/e/a	dolaze

ići to go

ja	idem	mi	idemo
ti	ideš	vi	idete
on/a/o	ide	oni/e/a	idu

gledati to look at

ja	gledam	mi	gledamo
ti	gledaš	vi	gledate
on/a/o	gleda	oni/e/a	gledaju

These three verbs represent the three patterns of the verb in the present tense in Croatian.

There are a small number of irregular verbs which do not follow this plan. The ones which you have met so far are:

moći may, can, able – to do something

ja	mogu	mi	možemo
ti	možeš	vi	možete
on/a/o	može	oni/e/a	mogu

biti to be

short form

ja sam

ti si

on/a/o je

mi smo

vi ste

oni/e/a su

long form

jesam

jesi

jest

(jest also has form jeste)

jesmo

jeste

jesu

The negative form is spelt as one word:

nisam

nisi

nije

nismo

niste

nisu

There is one exception to the use of the short form of **biti** and that is when asking a question with **je**. In this instance the short form may come at the beginning of the question. Compare the following:

Je li Sandra u hotelu?

Jesu li Sandra i Mark u hotelu?

*Is Sandra in the hotel?**Are Sandra and Mark in the hotel?*

Where things are

New expressions are used in this unit which tell you where things are:

ispred hotela

Evo Jasne.

blizu spomenika

ispod drveta

Nije daleko od trga.

Daleko je od trga.

*in front of the hotel**Here is Jasna.**near the monument**under the tree**It is not far from the square.**It is far from the square.*

Each position word is followed by the genitive case (gen.). This is another of the cases in Croatian. You can see the pattern of changes from the examples below:

Masc. (e.g. hotel)

gen.

hotela (add -a)**Fem.** (e.g. škola)

gen.

škole (change -a to -e)**Neut.** (e.g. predgrađe)

gen.

predgrađa (change -e/-o to -a)

How to say of

The genitive is not only used after certain place words. It has another important use to mean *of*.

u centru grada – *in the centre of town*
where *grada* actually means *of town*

Cases are often used when in English we would have to use one of those small words like *of, to, by, etc.* They give a greater economy to the language, although it takes a little while for the English speaker to become used to thinking about the ends of words in this way.

Other uses of cases

Look at these examples taken from the dialogues in this and the previous unit:

Kava je dobra.

The coffee is good.

Ja bih kavu.

I would like a coffee.

Vidite li tamo veliku zgradu?

Do you see the big building there?

Vidim Rudolfa blizu spomenika. *I see Rudolf near the monument.*

The words *kava, zgrada* and *Rudolf* all change at the end. To understand why these words change here, look at these two English sentences:

I see him.

He sees me.

When *I* comes before the verb it is called the subject because it is the one who is performing the action of the verb. When it comes after the verb it changes to *me* and is called the object because the action of the verb is carried out on it. This is the pattern of the English language and you would be unlikely to confuse *I* and *me* (or *he* and *him*). The same principle operates in Croatian with all nouns.

In Croatian, nouns which are the object of the sentence are put into the accusative case. The accusative case of masculine nouns is the same as the nominative except when masculine nouns in the singular refer to people or animals when the accusative case is the same as the genitive. Study the following examples:

Volim kavu.

I like coffee.

Volim pivo.

I like beer.

Volim London.
Vidim Rudolfa.
Vidim Marka.
Vidim Jasnu.

*I like London.
I see Rudolf.
I see Mark.
I see Jasna.*

The case which identifies the gender of a noun is the nominative (nom.), and is used to express the subject of a sentence. Study the following examples:

Sandra (nom.) vidi Jasnu (acc.). *Sandra sees Jasna.*
Mark (nom.) vidi Rudolfa (acc.). *Mark sees Rudolf.*

His/her/its/their (possessive adjectives)

Jasna points out the building to Sandra where Rudolf has his office and says **Tamo je njegov ured.** The words for *his, her, its* and *their* are adjectives like **moj, tvoj, naš** and **vaš**.

njegov	<i>his</i>
njen (or njezin)	<i>her</i>
njihov	<i>their</i>

Njegov also substitutes for neut. nouns as in:

Ovo je kazalište.	<i>This is the theatre.</i>
Njegova fasada je...	<i>Its facade is...</i>

The ending of the word changes to match in gender (agreement) with the thing being owned. Examples:

Ovo je njegov ured.	<i>This is his office.</i>
Ovo je njihov hotel.	<i>This is their hotel.</i>
Ovo je njena kava.	<i>This is her coffee.</i>
Ovo je njegovo pivo.	<i>This is his beer.</i>

Unusual noun categories

You have seen how nouns and verbs change their form, and how all these changes fall into certain patterns, and how some words do not follow the standard patterns, like **posao** which is a masculine noun although it ends in **-o**.

Drvo *tree* is a neut. noun, but with a slight difference to the usual pattern. Before case endings it adds **-et-** as in **ispod drveta**. A small group of such nouns follows this pattern:

nom. drvo	gen. drveta
acc. drvo	dat. drvetu

Practice

- 1 There are two correct and two incorrect verb endings given for each personal pronoun. Choose the two correct ones:

a	ja	moram, moramo, mogu, možemo.
b	ti	govoriš, razumiješ, idete, morate.
c	on	idu, dolazi, radi, moraju.
d	mi	vidimo, idemo, uči, radi.
e	vi	ste, smo, govorite, razumiješ.
f	oni	idu, rade, razumije, vidi.

- 2 Put the nouns in brackets below into the correct case for the preposition:

- a Spomenik je u (park).
- b Naš hotel nije daleko od (kavana).
- c Pošta je na (trg).
- d Rudolf je blizu (drvo).
- e Mark ide u (grad).
- f Sandra ide na (pošta).


- 3 Put the nouns in brackets below into the correct case for the object of the sentence:

- a Rudolf vidi (Jasna) ispod drveta.
- b Gledamo (spomenik) u parku.
- c Sandra mora kupiti (kava) i (sok).
- d Žele piti (vino).
- e Učiteljica voli (škola) u gradu.
- f Sekretarica vidi (gospodin) u uredu.

- 4 Supply the correct form of **njegov**, **njen** or **njihov** as required:

e.g. Mark je u kavani. Ovo je _____ kava.
Ovo je njegova kava.

- a Jasna je u kavani. Ovo je _____ sok.
- b Rudolf je u kavani. Ovo je _____ vino.
- c Sandra radi u školi. Ovo je _____ škola.
- d Mark i Rudolf rade u uredu. Ovo je _____ ured.
- e Jasna i Sandra su u kavani. Ovo je _____ vino.
- f Mark i Sandra su u Zagrebu. Ovo je _____ hotel.

-  5 Fill in your part of the dialogues:

- a Gdje je hotel?
It is on the left in front of the station.

A gdje je kolodvor?
It is not far from the post office.

- b *Where can I buy stamps and envelopes?*
Na pošti.

Where is the post office?
Idete ravno. Pošta je na desno.

- c *Where is Rudolf going?*
Ide na posao.
Where does he work?

- d Da li Mark gleda Sandru?
Yes, he is looking at Sandra.
Gdje je Sandra?
Sandra is near the building.

- 6 Substitute the noun or nouns in brackets for **on/ona/ono** or **oni/one/ona**:

- a (Zgrada) je velika.
b (Mark) je u hotelu.
c (Rudolf i njegova prijateljica) su na trgu.
d (Pošta) je u centru grada, blizu parka.
e (Sandra i Jasna) su ispred kolodvora.
f (Drvo) nije daleko od spomenika.
g (Rudolf i Mark) idu u centar grada.
h (Spomenik) je u parku.

► Comprehension 1

Marija Marinković is a tour guide in Zagreb. She is showing a group of tourists around the centre of Zagreb.

Marija Sada smo u centru grada. Zagreb je lijep grad. To je kulturni i politički centar Hrvatske. Mi smo ispred hotela. Tamo je Glavni kolodvor. Na desno je hotel Esplanade. Idemo ravno prema trgu.

Turist Oprostite, što je ono u parku?

Marija To je spomenik. On se nalazi u parku.

Turist Gdje je kazalište?

Marija Kazalište nije daleko. Idete ravno, a ono je na desno. Zgrada je velika i lijepa. Sada dolazimo na Jelačićev trg. Velika zgrada na desno je Gradska kavana. Sada idemo u Gornji grad. On je vrlo star.

kulturni i politički centar	<i>cultural and political centre</i>
Hrvatske	<i>of Croatia</i>
prema trgu	<i>towards the square</i>
ono	<i>that (over there)</i>
On se nalazi u parku.	<i>It is situated.</i>
	<i>(Lit. finds itself in the park.)</i>
star	<i>old</i>

True or false?

- a Zagreb is the cultural and political centre of Croatia.
 b To get to the theatre you go straight on and it is on the left.
 c The café on the square is called **Gradska kavana**.

Comprehension 2

Read the following short passage about Velimir and Zvonko and answer the questions below:

Velimir ide u grad. Na ulici vidi Zvonka. Idu zajedno kroz park i razgovaraju. Dolaze do spomenika. Onda idu na desno, prema trgu.

Zvonko Želiš li ići na kavu, Velimire?

Velimir Možemo ići na kavu, ali prvo moram ići na poštu. Želim kupiti marke.

Zvonko Gradska kavana nije daleko od pošte. Idemo tamo.

Idu zajedno na poštu. Velimir ulazi u zgradu. Zgrada je velika. Velimir izlazi i idu na desno. Ulaze u kavanu.

Zvonko Što želiš popiti?

Velimir Ja bih kavu, hvala.

Zvonko I ja bih kavu.

na ulici	<i>on the street</i>
Vidi Zvonka.	<i>He (i.e. Velimir) sees Zvonko (Zvonka is acc.).</i>
kroz	<i>through (+ acc.).</i>
zajedno	<i>together</i>
razgovarati, razgovaram	<i>to chat, have a conversation</i>
do	<i>up to, as far as (+ gen.)</i>
prvo	<i>first</i>
ulaziti, ulazim	<i>to enter (followed by u zgradu)</i>
izlaziti, izlazim	<i>to go out, come out</i>

Select the correct answer from a, b and c for each of the questions below.

- 1 Kamo idu Zvonko i Velimir?
 - a Idu kroz park.
 - b Idu u kazalište.
 - c Idu u Gornji grad.
- 2 Što Velimir želi kupiti?
 - a Želi kupiti kovertu.
 - b Želi kupiti kavu.
 - c Želi kupiti marke.
- 3 Što žele Zvonko i Velimir popiti?
 - a Žele popiti pivo.
 - b Žele popiti kavu.
 - c Žele popiti vino.

04

želim kupiti...

I want to buy...

In this unit you will learn how to

- use phrases and expressions when shopping for basic items and when in the post office
- say numbers 1–20
- use words for handling money
- use expressions relating to need or desire

► Dialogue

Sandra treba kupiti neke stvari.

Sandra Želim kupiti razglednicu, Jasna. Moram pisati mami. Gdje mogu kupiti razglednicu?

Jasna Razglednice možete kupiti u kiosku. Tamo je kiosk. Ali u svim kioscima ne prodaju razglednice.

trebati, trebam	<i>to need, require</i>	mama	<i>Mum</i>
neke stvari	<i>some things</i>	kiosk	<i>kiosk</i>
razglednica	<i>postcard</i>	u svim kioscima	<i>in all kiosks</i>
pisati, pišem	<i>to write</i>	prodavati, prodajem	<i>to sell</i>

From now onwards you will find more nouns in the nominative case, although they might appear in another case in the **Dialogue**. Adjectives are given in the masculine nominative case. The forms are as they appear in the **Dialogue** where confusion might otherwise occur.

Sandra Molim vas, imate li razglednice?

Prodavačica Imam i velike i male razglednice. Kakve želite?

Sandra Trebam veliku razglednicu. Koliko košta velika razglednica?

Prodavačica Velika razglednica košta četiri kune, a mala tri kune.

Sandra Dajte mi, molim vas, jednu veliku razglednicu, i jednu malu.

Prodavačica Sedam kuna. Još nešto?

Sandra Ne, hvala. (*Daje novac ženi.*)

Prodavačica Molim.

Jasna Hoćete li još nešto, Sandra?

Sandra Znate, trebam sapun, šampon i zubnu pastu.

Jasna Idemo u samoposlugu.

prodavačica	<i>saleswoman</i>
imati, imam	<i>to have</i>
molim vas	<i>please (Lit. I beg you)</i>
i... i...	<i>both... and...</i>
male razglednice	<i>small postcards</i>
Kakve želite?	<i>What kind do you want?</i>
Koliko košta velika razglednica?	<i>How much does a large postcard cost?</i>
velika razglednica košta	<i>a large postcard costs</i>
četiri kune	<i>4 kuna</i>
tri kune	<i>3 kuna</i>

(kuna currency of Croatia abbreviated to **Kn**: divided into 100 **lipa**)

dajte mi	<i>give to me</i>
jednu veliku razglednicu	<i>one large postcard (acc.)</i>
sedam kuna	<i>7 kuna</i>
Hoćete li još nešto?	<i>Do you want anything else?</i>
htjeti, hoću (irregular verb)	<i>to want</i>
davati, dajem	<i>to give</i>
novac	<i>money</i>
žena	<i>woman</i>
hvala	<i>thank you</i>
molim	<i>response to hvala, please</i>
sapun	<i>soap</i>
šampon	<i>shampoo</i>
zubna pasta	<i>toothpaste</i>
samoposluga	<i>self-service shop</i>

Mark i Rudolf ulaze u poštu.

- Mark** Molim vas, dajte mi tri koverta i marke za Englesku.
Čovjek Ne prodajem koverta i nemam marke. Ovo je pogrešan šalter. Trebate šalter broj sedam.
Mark Molim vas, mogu li ovdje kupiti marke i koverta?
Čovjek Kako da ne, gospodine. Ovo je pošta!

čovjek	<i>person, man</i>
tri koverta	<i>three envelopes</i>
marke za Englesku	<i>stamps for England</i>
nemam	<i>I have not</i>
pogrešan šalter	<i>the wrong counter</i>
šalter broj sedam	<i>counter number seven</i>
kako da ne	<i>of course</i>

True or false?

- Small postcards cost 4 kuna at the kiosk.
- Mark wants to buy four envelopes.
- Mark goes straightaway to the correct counter.

i Shops

Kiosks are dotted along the streets of towns in the whole region. They sell newspapers, cigarettes, postcards, stamps, and often other small items. When handing over change or your purchases the shopkeeper

might say **izvolite** (*here you are*). When asking for something it sounds a little harsh in English to say the equivalent of *give to me* (**dajte mi**), but it is said.

Post office

In addition to selling stamps and other items obvious to a visitor from England, you can also make telephone calls from post offices. This is particularly important if making a call overseas as the rates tend to be much higher in hotels than in a post office. Simply go to the main desk in the post office, say where you want to call, you will then be told which booth (**kabina**) to use, make your call and pay on your way out.

Hvala/Molim

You have met these words before. It is polite to reply with **molim** when someone says **hvala** to you. **Molim** also has other meanings. It is the equivalent of *please* when making a polite request, or if said with a questioning intonation it means that you are asking that someone repeat what they have just said (very useful!).

▶ Key phrases

How to:

- express need or desire to different degrees.

<i>I need</i>	trebam
<i>I may, can</i>	mogu
<i>I must</i>	moram
<i>I want</i>	želim
<i>Do you want...?</i>	Hoćete li...?
- request something in a shop.

	Molim vas, imate li...?
	Molim vas, dajte mi...
- ask how much something costs.

	Koliko košta...?
--	------------------
- use some numbers.

	jedna razglednica
	tri kune
	tri koverta
- name basic items for purchase.

<i>postcard</i>	razglednica
<i>envelope</i>	koverta
<i>stamp</i>	marka
<i>soap</i>	sapun
<i>shampoo</i>	šampon

toothpaste

- say *thank you*,
and to reply politely.

zubna pasta

hvala
molim

How it works

Htjeti, hoću

Another common word meaning *want* is used in this unit. It follows an irregular pattern:

ja	hoću	mi	hoćemo
ti	hoćeš	vi	hoćete
on/a/o	hoće	oni/e/a	hoće

Like *biti* this verb also has a negative form which is all one word:

ja	neću	mi	nećemo
ti	nećeš	vi	nećete
on/a/o	neće	oni/e/a	neće

Hoću razglednicu.
Neću kupiti razglednicu.

*I want a postcard.
I do not want to buy
a postcard.*

Hoćemo kavu.
Nećete velike razglednice.

*We want coffee.
You don't want the big
postcards.*

Htjeti (hoću, I want) is an alternative to the verb *željeti (želim)* which was used in Unit 2. *Željati* is a verb which follows the regular patterns which you know, but *htjeti* is also commonly used.

Nemam.../I have not...

The words meaning *I have not...*, etc. are also a single word:

ja	nemam	mi	nemamo
ti	nemaš	vi	nemate
on/a/o	nema	oni/e/a	nemaju

You have now met the only three verbs which form their negative as a single word (**nisam, neću, nemam**). As you know, all the others put **ne** in front of the verb:

Ne pišem.
Ne govore.

I'm not writing.
They're not speaking.

How to say to

As seen in the previous unit, little words in English such as *of* are conveyed in Croatian by the use of cases. The dative case is used in such phrases as *to write to, to give to* and *to say to*, so Sandra remarks **Moram pisati mami** *I must write to Mum*.

There is no separate word for *to* in the Croatian sentence. It is implied by the use of the dative case. Similarly, the word *for* is implied by the use of the dative case in the sentence **Moram kupiti sapun mami** *I must buy the soap for Mum*. Look at these other examples:

Jasna mora pisati Rudolfu.
Mi pišemo prijateljici.

Jasna must write to Rudolf.
*We are writing to our**
friend (female).

Konobar daje salatu ženi.

The waiter gives the salad
to the woman.

*Words such as *my, your*, etc. are often omitted in Croatian if it is clear from the context which word is implied.

Look at the way the last example is built up of nouns with different endings (cases):

Subject	Verb	Object	To...
nominative		accusative	dative
konobar	daje	salatu	ženi

Compare with the following sentence:

žena daje salatu konobaru

It is important to use the correct case ending in Croatian, since to use the wrong one could make you imply that the woman did not like her salad and she was returning it!

Plurals

To say more than one of something in the nominative and accusative cases:

Masc. (e.g. hotel, grad)
 nom. hoteli (add -i)
 acc. hotele (add -e)

Masc. nouns of one syllable usually add -ov- before the case ending

nom. gradovi (add -ovi)
 acc. gradove (add -ove)
 after a soft consonant (c, č, ć, dž, đ, j, lj, nj, š, ž) add -evi and -eve (e.g. muž – muževi) see spelling rule Unit 2, p. 17.

Fem. (e.g. škola)
 nom. škole (change -a to -e)
 acc. škole (change -a to -e)

Neut. (e.g. kazalište)
 nom. kazališta (change -e/-o to -a)
 acc. kazališta (change -e/-o to -a)

Examples

Masc.

Hoteli su tamo.	<i>The hotels are there.</i>
Vidim hotele tamo.	<i>I see the hotels there.</i>

Fem.

Razglednice su na šalteru.	<i>The postcards are on the counter.</i>
Imam razglednice.	<i>I have the postcards.</i>

Neut.

Kazališta su ispred parka.	<i>The theatres are in front of the park.</i>
Vidim kazališta.	<i>I see the theatres.</i>

Spelling rules

There are certain rules for spelling which effect nouns. When **i** is added after **k, g, h**, these letters change to **c, z, s**. Study the following examples:

Kiosk je na ulici.	<i>The kiosk is on the street.</i>
Kiosci su na ulici.	<i>The kiosks are on the street.</i>
Idemo u samoposlugu.	<i>We are going to the self-service shop.</i>
Sada smo u samoposluzi.	<i>Now we are in the self-service shop.</i>

Exceptions are made for people's proper names: **Branka** (a girl's name) becomes **Branki**.

Unusual categories of nouns

1 stvar

The word **stvar** *thing* is a feminine noun although it ends in a consonant (like *večer*). There is a small sub-category of these nouns with the following endings:

	singular	plural
nom.	stvar	stvari
acc.	stvar	stvari
gen.	stvari	
dat.	stvari	

2 čovjek

The word **čovjek** refers to a person regardless of sex. It has an unusual plural in the form **ljudi** *people, men*. Both words are masc.:

	singular	plural
nom.	čovjek	ljudi
acc.	čovjeka	ljude
gen.	čovjeka	
dat.	čovjeku	

Čovjek je na ulici.
Ljudi su na ulici.

*A person is in the street.
People are in the street.*

► Numbers 1–20

jedan, jedna, jedno	1	jedanaest	11
dva/dvije	2	dvanaest	12
tri	3	trinaest	13
četiri	4	četnaest	14
pet	5	petnaest	15
šest	6	šesnaest	16
sedam	7	sedamnaest	17
osam	8	osamnaest	18
devet	9	devetnaest	19
deset	10	dvadeset	20

The number *one* behaves like an adjective. This means that its ending changes according to the word which follows:

Masc.

jedan stol

one table

Fem.

jedna žena

one woman

Neut.

jedno kazalište

one theatre

The number *two* has different forms when it refers to masculine or neuter nouns (*dva*) and when it refers to feminine (*dvije*). Like the numbers *three* (*tri*) and *four* (*četiri*) they are followed by words in the genitive singular:

dva stola

two tables

dva piva

two beers

dvije kave

two coffees

tri kune

three kuna

četiri koverta

four envelopes

The numbers 5–20 are followed by the genitive plural. The most frequent ending for the genitive plural is a for all genders:

Masc.

pet sapuna

šest gradova

Fem.

sedam kuna

osam razglednica

Neut.

devet piva

However, when there are one or more consonants at the end, they are separated by an extra **a**:

marka (add case ending to **mark-**) deset maraka

Some nouns take **i** at the end

stvar

stvari

čovjek

ljudi

Practice

1 Write out the following prices and then add them up:

a



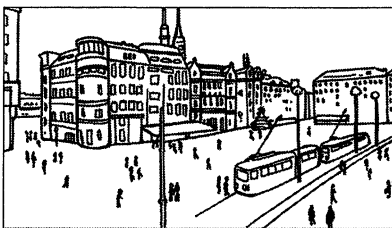
2 Kn

c



4 Kn

b



12 Kn

Koliko košta...?

- a koverta
- b razglednica
- c marka

2 Look at this table and make up sentences similar to this:

Rudolf hoće kavu. Koliko košta kava? Kava košta deset kuna.

a	Rudolf	kava	10 Kn
b	Sandra	razglednica	4 Kn
c	Mark	pivo	15 Kn
d	Jasna	šampon	20 Kn
e	Zvonko	marka	2 Kn
f	Velimir	marka za Englesku	12 Kn

- 3 Put the nouns in brackets into the plural and into the correct case:
- Moram kupiti (marka i razglednica).
 - Vidim (park) gdje su (spomenik).
 - (Hotel) su u centru grada.
 - (Čovjek) vole živjeti u gradu.
 - U centru grada su velike (zgrada).
 - Prodajete li (koverta)?



- 4 Complete the missing part of dialogue:

Hello. Do you have any postcards?
 Dobar dan. Imamo razglednice.
May I see the large postcards?
 Izvolite.
How much does one large postcard cost?
 Četiri kune.
Give me three, please.
 To je dvanaest kuna.
Thank you. Goodbye.
 Molim. Do viđenja.

- 5 Make up sentences according to the following model using the information below:

e.g. Sandra davati novac žena.
 Sandra daje novac ženi.

a	Mark	davati	kava	Rudolf
b	Čovjek	davati	marka	Jasna
c	Mi	davati	sapun	mama
d	Žena	davati	pivo	Velimir
e	Oni	davati	novac	čovjek
f	Konobar	davati	vino	Branka

- 6 Match the questions to the answers:

a	Trebam marke i koverta.	i	Gdje je Jasna?
b	Idem na kavu.	ii	Što trebate?
c	Evo Jasne.	iii	Imate li marke?
d	Nemamo.	iv	Kamo ideš?

- 7 Complete the sentences with the most appropriate verbs chosen from the box below. If necessary the required form of the verb is indicated by ja, etc. in brackets, where it would not normally be included in such a sentence or question:

- a _____ li (ja) kupiti razglednice u kiosku?
 b _____ li vi engleski?
 c Mark i Sandra _____ u hotelu u Zagrebu.
 d Oprostite, _____ li vi gospođa Bryant?
 e Kamo _____ Rudolf i Mark?
 f Ja _____ živjeti u centru grada.

živjeti ići voljeti govoriti moći biti

Comprehension 1

U samoposluzi Sandra traži neke stvari.

- Sandra** Molim vas, gdje su sapuni i šamponi?
Prodavač Tamo lijevo.
Sandra Koji sapun je dobar, Jasna?
Jasna Ja koristim ovaj sapun. Kažu da je i taj dobar. Ovdje su šamponi.
Sandra Dobro, gdje je zubna pasta?
Jasna Ovdje negdje. Ovo je odlična pasta.
Sandra Hvala. Imam sve. Gdje mogu platiti?
Jasna Na blagajni kod izlaza.

Na blagajni

- Blagajnica** Sapun..., šampon..., zubna pasta... Trebate još nešto, gospođo?
Sandra Ne, hvala. Do viđenja.
Blagajnica Do viđenja.

Sandra traži...	<i>Sandra looks for...</i>
tražiti, tražim	<i>to look for (also in the sense of to ask for)</i>
prodavač	<i>salesman</i>
koji sapun?	<i>which soap?</i>
koristiti, koristim	<i>to use</i>
ovaj sapun	<i>this soap</i>
kažu da...	<i>they say that...</i>
taj	<i>that, that one</i>
negdje	<i>somewhere</i>
odličan	<i>excellent</i>
sve	<i>everything</i>

platiti, platim	<i>to pay</i>
na blagajni	<i>at the checkout</i>
kod izlaza	<i>by the exit</i>
blagajnica	<i>checkout operator (female)</i>
gospođa	<i>madam (from gospođa)</i>

True or false?

- a Sandra traži sapune i šampone.
- b Blagajna je kod izlaza.
- c Sandra treba još nešto na blagajni.

► Comprehension 2

Read or listen to the following passage and answer the questions below.

Sandra i Mark dolaze u hotel. Idu na recepciju.

Sandra Molim vas, dajte mi ključ od sobe broj 20. To je naša soba.

Recepcija Evo ga, gospođo. Izvolite.

Sandra Hvala.

Recepcija Molim.

Sandra Oprostite, gdje se u hotelu mogu kupiti novine?

Recepcija Novine prodajemo tamo blizu lifta.

Mark i Sandra idu tamo.

Mark Molim vas, imate li engleske novine?

Prodavač Imamo *Guardian* i *The Economist*.

Mark Imate li možda *Financial Times*?

Prodavač Nemamo.

Mark Dajte mi, molim vas, *Guardian*. A prodajete li cigarete?

Prodavač Ovdje ne prodajemo cigarete. Morate ići u bar.

Mark Hvala.

Prodavač Molim.

recepcija	<i>reception</i>
ključ od sobe	<i>key to the room</i>
soba	<i>room</i>
Gdje se u hotelu mogu kupiti novine?	<i>Where can one buy newspapers in the hotel?</i>
broj	<i>number</i>
novine	<i>newspaper(s)</i>

lift	<i>lift</i>
možda	<i>perhaps</i>
cigareta	<i>cigarette</i>
bar	<i>bar</i>

Select the correct answer from a, b and c for each of the questions below.

- Što Sandra traži na recepciji?
 - Traži sapun.
 - Traži ključ od njihove sobe.
 - Želi kupiti cigarete.
- Gdje se u hotelu mogu kupiti novine?
 - Kod izlaza.
 - Ispred bara.
 - Blizu lifta.
- Gdje se u hotelu mogu kupiti cigarete?
 - Na recepciji.
 - U restoranu.
 - U baru.

05

u restoranu in the restaurant

In this unit you will learn how to

- **order a meal**
- **ask for and state opinions, preferences, advice**
- **express agreement**
- **attract the attention of others**
- **say *there is/are* and *there is/are not***

► Dialogue

Mark i Sandra idu s Rudolfom i Jasnom u restoran. Idu na večeru. U restoranu sjede za stolom u uglu. Za drugim stolovima ima mnogo ljudi. Rudolf zove konobara.

- Rudolf** Konobaru, molim vas, imate li jelovnik?
Konobar Imamo. Izvolite, gospodine.
Rudolf Hvala.
Konobar Molim.
Rudolf Konobaru, što nam preporučujete za večeru?
Konobar Naša riba je uvijek svježja, a i meso je odlično. Preporučujem vam nacionalne specijalitete. Imamo zagrebački odrezak i lignje na ribarski način.
Rudolf Ja znam da je sve ovdje vrlo svježje. Sandra, što ćete jesti?
Sandra Volim meso, ali više volim ribu.
Jasna Onda vam savjetujem lignje na ribarski način.
Mark A što meni savjetujete, Jasna? Mislite li da je roštilj dobar?
Jasna Pretpostavljam da jest, ali zagrebački odrezak je nacionalni specijalitet.
Mark Dobro. Čini mi se da moram probati zagrebački odrezak. Slažete li se?
Jasna Slažem se. I ja bih isto.
Rudolf Možemo naručiti večeru. Hoćemo li vino?
Jasna Naravno. Volite li više crno ili bijelo vino, Sandra?
Sandra Više volim crno.
Jasna Dobro, i hoćemo juhu i tri salate, Rudolf.
Sandra Prvo, mogu li dobiti čašu vode? Žedna sam.
Jasna I ja sam žedna. Nema vode na stolu. Konobaru, molim vas, dvije čaše vode.

jesti, jedem	<i>to eat</i>
s (preposition with instrumental)	<i>with</i>
večera	<i>dinner</i>
ići na večeru	<i>to go to dinner</i>
sjediti, sjedim	<i>to be sitting</i>
za stolom (stol nom.)	<i>at a table</i>
u uglu (ugao masc. like posao)	<i>in the corner</i>
za drugim stolovima	<i>at other tables</i>
Ima mnogo ljudi.	<i>There are many people.</i>
zvati, zovem	<i>to call</i>
konobar	<i>waiter</i>

jelovnik	<i>menu</i>
Što nam preporučujete? (preporučivati, preporučujem)	<i>What do you recommend to us?</i>
za večeru	<i>for dinner</i>
riba	<i>fish</i>
svjež	<i>fresh</i>
meso	<i>meat</i>
odličan	<i>excellent</i>
...vam	<i>...to you</i>
nacionalni specijalitet	<i>national speciality (dish)</i>
zagrebački odrezak	<i>Zagreb schnitzel</i>
lignje na ribarski način	<i>squid in the fisherman's way</i>
Što ćete jesti?	<i>What will you eat?</i>
više volim	<i>I prefer (Lit. I like more)</i>
savjetovati, savjetujem	<i>to advise</i>
Mislite li da...?	<i>Do you think that...?</i>
roštilj	<i>barbecue</i>
pretpostavljati, pretpostavljam	<i>to suppose</i>
Čini mi se da...	<i>It seems to me that...</i>
probati, probam	<i>to try</i>
Slazete li se?	<i>Do you agree?</i>
(slagati se, slažem se)	
I ja bih isto.	<i>I would like the same too.</i>
naručiti	<i>to order</i>
naravno	<i>of course</i>
juha	<i>soup</i>
salata	<i>salad</i>
crno ili bijelo vino	<i>red (Lit. black) or white wine</i>
Volite li više...?	<i>Do you prefer...?</i>
Mogu li dobiti čašu vode?	<i>May I have a glass of water?</i>
Nema vode.	<i>There is no water.</i>
dvije čaše vode	<i>two glasses of water</i>

Their conversation turns to meals and food.

Jasna	Sandra, što jedete za doručak u Londonu?
Sandra	Jedem kruh i džem, i pijem čaj s mlijekom.
Jasna	A što volite za ručak? Da li je ručak vaš glavni obrok?
Sandra	Ručak nije naš glavni obrok. Na poslu jedem sendvič.
Jasna	Što vi jedete, Mark?
Mark	Za ručak i ja jedem malo.

Što jedete?	<i>What do you eat?</i>
za doručak	<i>for breakfast</i>
Jedem kruh i džem.	<i>I eat bread and jam.</i>
Pijem čaj s mlijekom.	<i>I drink tea with milk.</i>
piti, pijem	<i>to drink</i>
za ručak	<i>for lunch</i>
vaš glavni obrok	<i>your main meal</i>
na poslu	<i>at work</i>
sendvič	<i>sandwich</i>
malo	<i>a little</i>

True or false?

- The restaurant has fish and meat.
- Sandra prefers meat.
- Sandra drinks coffee for breakfast.

i Meals

The words for meals are **doručak** *breakfast*, **ručak** *lunch* and **večera** *dinner*. Breakfast is usually eaten at about 9 a.m. or 10 a.m. and often eaten at work. Many people begin work earlier than in England, e.g. at 6 a.m., and return home from work in the middle of the afternoon. Lunch is then taken as the main meal of the day, after which follows a nap. The evening meal is usually a light supper. However, this pattern of starting the day early and having a nap in the afternoon is slowly being replaced in urban areas by a more nine to five routine as found commonly elsewhere in Europe. As this new habit spreads, so the evening meal is becoming the main meal of the day.

Restaurants

There are many types of places to eat, from a local **kavana** to hotels which serve international cuisine. But one of the delights of visiting a country is to try local specialities. Eating out is not expensive and each region offers different specialities. In most restaurants you will find various first courses (**predjelo**), followed by main courses (**gotova jela**, **specijaliteti**) and sweets (**slatko**) with ice cream (**sladoled**), filled pancakes (**palačinke**) or cakes (**kolači**). You may be asked if you would like an aperitif (**aperitiv**) of a local brandy such as grape brandy (**lozovača**). There are many types of wine which vary greatly in quality and price.

▶ Key phrases

How to:

- | | |
|---|--|
| • ask for a recommendation. | Što nam preporučujete? |
| • suggest something. | Preporučujem vam... |
| • ask for,
and give advice. | Što mi savjetujete?
Savjetujem vam... |
| • ask for,
and give agreement. | Slažete li se?
Slažem se. |
| • ask for
and give your own preference. | Što volite više...?
Volite li više...?
Više volim... |
| • ask for another person's opinion. | Mislite li da...? |
| • state what you think. | Znam da...
Čini mi se da...
Pretpostavljam da... |
| • ask for the menu. | Imate li jelovnik? |
| • request a glass of water. | Mogu li dobiti čašu vode? |
| • say <i>there is</i> or <i>there are</i> . | Ima mnogo ljudi. |
| • say <i>there is not</i> or <i>there are not</i> . | Nema vode na stolu. |

How it works

Cases

You have now met the last of the cases and the standard endings for nouns.

a Instrumental singular

The two prepositions *s with* and *za behind*, (but used in the phrase *at a table*) are followed by the instrumental case (although *za* may also be followed by the accusative when it will mean *for*). The endings are as follows:

Masc. (e.g. *grad, muž*)

ins. **gradom** (add **-om**)

ins. **mužem** (add **-em** before a soft consonant **c, č, ć, dž, đ, j, lj, nj, š, ž**)

Fem. (e.g. prijateljica, stvar)

- ins. prijateljicom (change -a to -om; -om does not change before a soft consonant for fem. nouns)
 ins. stvari/stvarju (add -i or -ju to fem. nouns which end in a consonant)

Neut. (e.g. pivo, predgrađe)

- ins. pivom (change -o to -om)
 ins. predgrađem (change -e to -em)

b Instrumental and dative plural

You can learn these two together as they are the same.

Masc. (e.g. prijatelj, grad, kiosk)

- ins. + dat. prijateljima (add -ima)
 ins. + dat. gradovima (add -ov- before the case endings for masc. nouns with one syllable)
 ins. + dat. kioscima (the k changes to c before -i)

Fem. (e.g. žena, stvar)

- ins. + dat. ženama (change -a to -ama)
 ins. + dat. stvarima (add -ima to fem. nouns which end in a consonant)

Neut. (e.g. predgrađe)

- ins. + dat. predgrađima (change -e/-o to -ima)

c Vocative singular and plural

This case is used when addressing people directly in speech or in a letter. It is the case used when you want to call someone (vocative). The endings in the singular are:

Masc. (e.g. prijatelj, gospodin)

- voc. gospodine (add -e)
 voc. prijatelju (add -u after a soft consonant and sometimes after -r)

Fem. (e.g. žena, gospođica)

- voc. ženo (change -a to -o)
 voc. gospođice (change -a to -e if ending is -ica)
 However, in practice, few fem. nouns change:
 voc. of Jasna is Jasna.

Neut. (e.g. dijete *child*)

- voc. dijete (no change)

There are few occasions when you would use the vocative with the neuter as most words refer to inanimate objects. Theoretically, there is a vocative ending for all nouns, but there

are not many occasions in life when you want to address something like a house (**kućo!**). The endings in the plural are the same as the nominative in all genders.

There is a spelling rule for masculine nouns in the vocative singular; **-g** will change to **-ž**, **-k** will change to **-č**, **-h** will change to **-š**, and you add the ending **-e**. Look at the example:

Bog *God* **Bože!** (used as a mild expletive)

To me/to you, etc. (dative)

You already know the words for *I, you, etc.* (the personal pronouns):

ja	<i>I</i>	mi	<i>we</i>
ti	<i>you</i>	vi	<i>you</i>
on/ona	<i>he/she</i>	oni/one	<i>they</i> (masc. and fem.)
(there are also neut. forms ono and ona)			

As you also know in certain circumstances you use the dative to mean *to someone*:

Konobar daje salatu ženi. *The waiter gives the salad to the woman.*

So there are also words which mean *to me, to you, etc.*

Look at the examples given so far:

Što nam preporučujete? *What do you recommend to us?*
 Preporučujem vam... *I recommend to you...*
 Čini mi se... *It seems to me...*

nam	<i>to us</i>
vam	<i>to you</i> (equivalent to vi)
mi	<i>to me</i>

Here are all the forms together, both long and short forms:

	<i>short</i>	<i>long</i>		<i>short</i>	<i>long</i>
ja	mi	meni	mi	nam	nama
ti	ti	tebi	vi	vam	vama
on	mu	njemu	oni	im	njima
ona	joj	njoj	one	im	njima
(the forms for ono and ona are the same as for on and oni)					

You can use these words in other phrases and expressions which you know:

Konobar joj daje salatu.	<i>The waiter gives the salad to her.</i>
Moram mu pisati.	<i>I must write to him.</i>
Pišemo joj.	<i>We are writing to her.</i>

Look at the examples above carefully and you will notice how the short forms come in second place. This is the normal word order. They behave in the same way as the short forms of *biti*.

The long forms have two basic functions.

a They may come at the beginning to stress the person involved:

Meni se čini...	<i>To me it seems...</i>
Tebi preporučujem...	<i>It is to you that I'm recommending...</i>

b They are used after prepositions:

u zgradi	<i>in the building</i>
u njoj	<i>in it</i>

Otherwise use the short forms.

Ima/Nema

Croatian has just one word to express *there is...* and *there are...*: *ima*. It is the same form as the word which means *he/she has*. When it means *there is/are* it is followed by the genitive case to mean *some*:

Ima vode.	<i>There is some water.</i>
Ima kruha.	<i>There is some bread.</i>
Ovdje ima Engleza.	<i>There are English people here.</i>

The negative form is *nema* (*there is not/there are not*):

Nema vode.	<i>There is no water.</i>
Nema kruha.	<i>There is no bread.</i>
Ovdje nema Engleza.	<i>There are no English people here.</i>

You use the genitive singular or the plural as required by the sense of the sentence, as you use either singular or plural in English.

Mnogo and words of quantity

Mnogo many, much, a lot of is followed by the genitive case. Most words which indicate a quantity are followed by the genitive case, such as *čaša vode a glass of water* or *mnogo ljudi many people*.

Unusual categories of nouns

The word **ugao** *corner* is masculine and it follows the same pattern as **posao**. When adding an ending the **a** is lost and the **o** changes to **i**:

	singular	plural
nom.	ugao	uglovi (ugl- is one syllable)
acc.	ugao	uglove
gen.	ugla	uglova
dat.	uglu	uglovima
ins.	uglom	uglovima

Practice

- 1 Replace the pronoun in brackets with the corresponding form meaning *to me, to you, etc.*:
 - a Čini (on) se da Rudolf sjedi za stolom.
 - b Što (mi) preporučujete?
 - c Preporučujem (vi) crno vino.
 - d Što (ona) savjetujete?
 - e Čini (oni) se da je riba svježa.
 - f Sandra (ja) želi savjetovati.
 - g Moram (ti) pisati.
 - h Konobar (ona) daje salatu.
 - i Čovjek (ja) daje marke na pošti.
 - j Daje li (mi) bijelo vino?
- 2 Add the appropriate case ending to the nouns in brackets, note that some are given in the plural:
 - a (Jasna) se čini da je roštilj dobar.
 - b Što savjetuješ (konobari)?
 - c Vidim (čovjek) na ulici.
 - d Sandra vidi (zgrada) gdje radi Rudolf.
 - e Idemo li sada na (kava)?
 - f Idemo s (prijatelji) u grad.
 - g Rudolf sjedi za (stol) s (Jasna).
 - h Gledamo (konobari) u uglu restorana.
 - i Mark hoće (cigarete) i (novine).
 - j Volimo učiti (jezici).

▶ 3 Fill in the missing part of the dialogue.

Waiter! Hello. Do you have a menu?

Izvolite, gospodice.

Thank you.

Molim. Želite li naručiti?

What do you recommend to me?

Preporučujem naše lignje i salatu.

I prefer meat. I would like meat and a salad, please.

Hoćete li vino? Što više volite, crno ili bijelo?

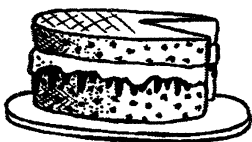
I prefer red, and may I have a glass of water?

JELOVNIK

PREDJELO

GOTOVA JELA

SLATKO



4 Match the answers to the questions:

- | | | | |
|---|------------------------------|-----|---------------------------|
| a | Slazem se. | i | Gdje je kruh? |
| b | Na stolu je. | ii | Mogu li dobiti čašu vode? |
| c | Kako da ne. | iii | Slazete li se s Jasnom? |
| d | Naše lignje su uvijek dobre. | iv | Što nam preporučujete? |

- 5 Imagine that you have invited some friends to a restaurant. How would you ask the waiter the following:
- if he has the menu.
 - for fish and salad.
 - for two beers.
 - for a glass of water.
- 6 Look at the following advertisements:



Which one sells fish?

- 7 Make up questions for the following responses:
- Da, volim pivo.
 - Ne, ne volim pivo.
 - Sutra idem u grad.
 - Želim piti crno vino.
 - Volimo ići u grad.
 - Ne, ne možeš dobiti čašu vode.
- 8 In the following sentences the noun in brackets is being used with either **mного** or **ima/nema**. Put the noun into the genitive case, and either singular or plural as appropriate (all the nouns are given here in the nominative singular).
- Ima li (kruh) na stolu?
 - Vidim mnogo (park) u centru grada.
 - Konobar daje mnogo (salata) ženi.
 - Nema (čovjek) na ulici.
 - Mislite li da Rudolf ima mnogo (prijatelj)?
 - Nema (vino) na stolu.
 - Čini joj se da ima (čovjek) za stolovima.
 - Ima li (Englez) ovdje u hotelu?
 - Nema (kava).
 - Tamo ima (razglednica).

► Comprehension 1

Zvonko i Velimir ulaze u kavanu.

Zvonko Je li slobodno, gospodine?

Gospodin Jest, izvolite.

Sjede za stolom.

Zvonko Voliš li više pivo ili vino, Velimire?

Velimir Više volim vino. Ali znam da nije dobro piti alkohol. Dobro je piti vodu ili sok.

Zvonko Imaš pravo. Što mi preporučuješ danas? Hoćemo li piti crno ili bijelo vino?

Velimir Konobaru, što nam preporučujete danas?

Konobar Imamo dobru svježu ribu, a i meso je odlično.

Velimir Ja hoću ribu, a ti Zvonko?

Zvonko Znaš da ne volim ribu. Ja hoću meso.

Konobar Dobro. A želite li vino?

Velimir Želimo jedno bijelo, i jedno crno vino.

Je li slobodno? *Is it (this place) free? (i.e. vacant)*

Imaš pravo. *You are right.*

Znaš da... *You know that...*

True or false?

- a Velimir prefers beer to wine.
- b Zvonko likes fish.
- c Velimir orders two red wines.

Comprehension 2

Read the passage and answer the questions below.

Sandra voli doručak. Svako jutro jede kruh s džemom i pije čaj. Njen muž, Mark, ne voli čaj, više voli piti bijelu kavu ili mlijeko. Sandra ruča u školi. Ne jede mnogo za ručak. Sjedi i jede sendvič. U sendviču je salata ili meso. Mark ponekad ruča s prijateljima u gradu, ali također ne voli jesti mnogo za ručak. Navečer, kod kuće, Sandra i Mark večeraju. Spremaju ribu ili dobro meso sa salatam. Vole jesti i kolače.

svako jutro	<i>every morning</i>
ili	<i>or</i>
ručati, ručam	<i>to have lunch</i>
sendvič	<i>sandwich</i>
također	<i>also</i>
navečer	<i>in the evening</i>
kod kuće	<i>at home</i>
večerati, večeram	<i>to have dinner</i>
spremati, spremam	<i>to prepare</i>

- Što Mark više voli piti za doručak?
 - Više voli piti mlijeko.
 - Više voli piti sok.
 - Više voli piti bijelu kavu ili mlijeko.
- Gdje Sandra ruča?
 - Ruča u gradu s mužem.
 - Ruča kod kuće.
 - Ruča na poslu.
- Što vole Mark i Sandra jesti za večeru?
 - Vole jesti palačinke.
 - Vole jesti kolače.
 - Vole jesti lignje na ribarski način.

06

dođite k meni

come to my place

In this unit you will learn how to

- give an invitation
- accept or decline an invitation
- give and ask for directions
- give your address and telephone number
- express degrees of certainty and uncertainty

Dialogue

Rudolf poziva Sandru i Marka.

Rudolf Sandra i Mark, molim vas, hoću vas pozvati k meni sutra navečer.

Mark Žao mi je, ali ne možemo doći. Moram raditi kod nas u hotelu.

Sandra Mark, ne možeš stalno raditi. Vrlo rado prihvaćamo poziv. Gdje stanujete?

Rudolf Stanujem blizu centra. Moja adresa je Heinzlova ulica šezdeset šest, a moj stan je na petom katu. Od hotela idite pješice do Glavnog kolodvora. Tamo uzmite ili tramvaj dvadeset, ili autobus sedamnaest. Voze prema Autobusnom kolodvoru. Siđite na osmoj stanici. Moj blok se nalazi odmah preko puta te stanice. To je Heinzlova ulica. Je li jasno? Za svaki slučaj, moj telefonski broj je dva šest sedam – sedam osam pet.

Sandra Da, u redu, imam sve podatke. Kada trebamo doći?

Rudolf Dođite sutra u sedam sati. I nemojte doći taksijem. Morate naučiti putovati gradskim prijevozom.

Dođite k meni.	<i>Come to my place (house/flat).</i>
Rudolf poziva... k njemu	<i>Rudolf is inviting... to his place</i>
Hoću vas pozvati k meni.	<i>I want to invite you to my place.</i>
Žao mi je.	<i>I'm sorry.</i>
kod nas u hotelu	<i>at our place (room) in the hotel</i>
stalno	<i>continuously</i>
vrlo rado	<i>very gladly</i>
Prihvaćamo poziv.	<i>We accept the invitation.</i>
stanovati, stanujem	<i>to live, reside</i>
blizu	<i>(preposition with gen.) near</i>
adresa	<i>address</i>
ulica	<i>street</i>
šezdeset šest	<i>66</i>
stan	<i>flat</i>
na petom katu	<i>on the fifth floor</i>
idite pješice	<i>go on foot</i>
uzmite (uzeti, uzmem)	<i>take (a bus)</i>
tramvaj	<i>tram</i>
autobus	<i>bus</i>
Voze prema Autobusnom kolodvoru.	<i>They drive towards the bus station.</i>

siđite (sići, siđem)	<i>get down/off (bus)</i>
na osmoj stanici	<i>at the eighth stop</i>
blok	<i>block (of flats)</i>
preko puta	<i>opposite</i>
(preposition with gen.)	
Je li jasno?	<i>Is that clear?</i>
za svaki slučaj	<i>in any event/case</i>
telefonski broj	<i>telephone number</i>
u redu	<i>all right, OK</i>
Imam sve podatke.	<i>I have all the information.</i>
kada	<i>when</i>
u sedam sati	<i>at seven o'clock</i>
Nemojte doći taksijem.	<i>Don't come by taxi.</i>
naučiti putovati gradskim	<i>to learn to travel by city transport</i>
prijevozom	

Sandra i Mark idu autobusom i silaze na osmoj stanici.
(*Unfortunately, they have taken the wrong bus.*)

Mark Da li si sigurna da je ovdje pravo mjesto? Ne vidim blok preko puta.

Sandra Sigurna sam. Ovo je osma stanica. Dolazi jedan gospodin. Pitaj njega.

Mark Oprostite, gospodine, možete li mi reći gdje je Heinzlova šezdeset šest?

Gospodin Ovo nije Heinzlova ulica.

Mark Možete li mi reći kako možemo tamo doći?

Gospodin Nije teško. Idite ravno i skrenite u drugu ulicu lijevo, onda skrenite u prvu ulicu desno i opet idite ravno do glavne ceste. To je Heinzlova.

Mark Hvala lijepo, gospodine.

Gospodin Nema na čemu. Do viđenja i laku noć.

silaze (silaziti, silazim)	<i>They get off (the bus).</i>
siguran (masc.) sigurna (fem.)	<i>sure, certain</i>
da	<i>that</i>
pravo mjesto	<i>the right place</i>
pitaj njega	<i>ask him</i>
pitati, pitam	<i>to ask</i>
Možete li mi reći...?	<i>Can you tell me...?</i>
...kako možemo tamo doći?	<i>...how we can get there?</i>

Nije teško.	<i>It's not difficult.</i>
idite ravno	<i>go straight on</i>
skrenite u drugu ulicu	<i>turn into the second street</i>
(skrenuti, skrenem)	
...u prvu ulicu	<i>...into the first street</i>
opet	<i>again</i>
do glavne ceste	<i>as far as the main road</i>
Hvala lijepo.	<i>Thanks very much.</i>
Nema na čemu.	<i>Don't mention it.</i>

True or false?

- a Mark ne prihvaća poziv.
- b Rudolf stanuje daleko od centra grada.
- c Mark i Sandra idu taksijem.

i When writing an address you usually indicate the floor on which the addressee lives by roman numerals after the number of the house or block of flats. So Rudolf would write:

Heinzlova 66/v

▶ Key phrases

How to:

- extend an invitation.
- decline politely an invitation.
- accept an invitation.
- give an address,
and a telephone number.
- ask for directions.
- ask how to get somewhere.
- give directions.
- ask if someone is sure
of something.

Želim vas pozvati...

Žao mi je...

Vrlo rado prihvaćamo poziv.

Moja adresa je...

Moj telefonski broj je...

Možete li mi reći gdje je...?

Kako možemo tamo doći?

idite ravno

idite ravno do glavne ceste
skrenite u prvu ulicu desno
skrenite u drugu ulicu lijevo

Da li si sigurna?

(ti form asking female)

- reply that you are sure.
 - say *thank you very much*, and reply (alternative reply)
- Jeste li sigurni? (vi form asking a stranger)
- Siguran sam. (male speaking)
- Sigurna sam. (female speaking)
- hvala lijepo
nema na čemu
molim lijepo

How it works

Giving commands

There is a special form of the verb which is used when you want to tell someone what to do, or what not to do. It is called the imperative. There are a number of examples in this unit:

Dođite k meni.	<i>Come to my place (home).</i>
Sidite na osmoj stanici.	<i>Get off at the eighth stop.</i>
Nemojte doći taksijem.	<i>Don't come by taxi.</i>
Pitaj ga.	<i>Ask him.</i>

There are, as you would expect, two forms. One corresponds to the **ti** form and one to the **vi** form.

Ti form

Take the **ja** form of the verb:

- a if it ends in **-am** replace the **-m** by **-j**
pitam → pitaj;
- b if it ends in **-jem** remove the ending **-em**
pijem → pij;
- c for all other verbs replace **-em/-im** by **-i**
idem → idi
uzmem uzmi
radim radi.

Vi form

To form the more formal or polite way of giving a command simply add **-te** to the **ti** form:

pitam	→	pitajte
pijem		pijte
idem		idite
uzmem		uzmite
radim		radite

Do not do...

The negative imperative is a command not to do something. It is formed by placing **nemoj** (for the ti form) and **nemojte** (for the vi form) in front of the infinitive. Look at these examples:

Nemojte doći taksijem.	<i>Don't come by taxi.</i>
Nemojte sići na osmoj stanici.	<i>Don't get off at the eighth stop.</i>
Nemoj pitati.	<i>Don't ask.</i>

There is an alternative way of forming the negative imperative made by putting **ne** in front of the imperative. However, this form sounds quite brusque and is best used sparingly. It is only made from the imperfective form of the imperative (see following section on completed and uncompleted actions):

Ne dolazi!	<i>Don't come!</i>
------------	--------------------

A completed and uncompleted action

There have been a few occasions when you have been given two different verbs to mean the same thing:

dolaziti, doći	<i>to come</i>
silaziti, sići	<i>to get off</i>
piti, popiti	<i>to drink</i>
davati, dati	<i>to give</i>
uzimati, uzeti	<i>to take</i>

These pairs of verbs are important to using the system of verbs in Croatian. The differences between them can be described like this:

- a** the first verb of the pair is used to express an action which is, was or will be continuous, repeated or incomplete;
- b** the second verb of the pair is used to express an action which was or will be completed, which happened or will happen once only or is of a momentary nature.

Most often when you are talking in the present tense you use the first verb in the pair. If an action is still in progress then it is not yet complete. You have used the second verb of the pair in its infinitive form and in its imperative form. Look at the following examples and the differences between the pairs of verbs:

Pijem vodu kad* sam žedan. *I drink water when I'm thirsty.*
(It means that on each occasion when thirsty I drink water.)

Moram popiti čašu vode. *I must drink a glass of water.*
(It means that I must drink a glass and finish it, as in the sense of drink up.)

*Some words may be used with or without -a at the end depending on how easy it is to pronounce with the following word; *kada, kad when, sada, sad now, s, sa with.*

Sandra daje novac ženi. *Sandra is giving the money to the woman.* (It means that the action is still incomplete.)

Dajte mi, molim vas,... *Give me, please,...* (It refers to a single action which you expect to be momentary.)

These pairs of verbs are called aspects. The first verb is the imperfective aspect, and the second one is the perfective aspect.

Not all verbs come in pairs like this. *Vidjeti* is both imperfective and perfective.

Uses of cases (instrumental)

The instrumental case is so called because it is used to name an instrument by means of which an action is carried out. So you use it in the following phrases:

Idem taksijem. *I am going by taxi.*
Idem autobusom. *I am going by bus.*

as the means of transport is the instrument by which the action is being carried out.

Taksi (masc.) is slightly unusual in that it adds *j* before the case ending:

singular
nom. taksi
acc. taksi
gen. taksija
dat. taksiju
ins. taksijem

I see *him*...

The words for *me, him* and *us*, etc are also pronouns like the words *mi to me* or *mu to him* except that they are in the

accusative case. There is an example in the first line of the **Dialogue** in this unit **Hoću vas pozvati...** (*I want to invite you...*).

Consider the following sentence:

Vidim Rudolfa i Jasnu na ulici. *I see Rudolf and Jasna in the street.*

The endings of the words have changed to indicate that Rudolf and Jasna are the object of the verb. Separate forms are needed to indicate *him* and *her* too.

Here is the full list of the words for *me*, *him*, etc. These are the accusative case of the pronouns. They have both long and short forms like the dative pronouns:

	short	long		short	long
ja	me	mene	mi	nas	nas
ti	te	tebe	vi	vas	vas
on	ga	njega	oni	ih	njih
ona	ju	nju	one	ih	njih

The forms for **ono** and **ona** (neut.) are the same as for **on** and **oni**.

The same forms are used for the genitive case of the pronouns with the following exception for **ona**: **je** (short form), **nje** (long form). However, there is a preference for using **je** as the short form in the accusative.

The rules for the use of long and short forms are the same as when we looked at the dative. The long form is used for emphasis and after prepositions. The short form cannot stand at the beginning of a sentence. If you have an accusative or genitive pronoun used with a dative pronoun, the dative always comes first. Study the following examples:

Vidim Rudolfa.	<i>I see Rudolf.</i>
Vidim ga.	<i>I see him.</i>
Gledamo Jasnu.	<i>We are watching Jasna.</i>
Gledamo je.	<i>We are watching her.</i>
Dajem novac ženi.	<i>I am giving the money to the woman.</i>
Dajem joj ga.	<i>I am giving it to her.</i>
Konobar daje salatu ljudima.	<i>The waiter is giving the salad to the people.</i>
Konobar im je daje.	<i>The waiter is giving it to them.</i>

Note that the pronouns, like the short forms of **biti**, tend to come in second place after the first word.

New prepositions

You have met a number of new words to indicate position or direction in this unit:

Dođite k meni.	<i>Come to my place.</i> (Come and see me.)
Dođite k njemu.	<i>Come to his place.</i> (Come and see him.)
Radim kod nas.	<i>I am working at our place.</i>

These two words distinguish between going to someone or being at someone's: **k** (followed by the dative) indicates going round to see someone; **kod** (followed by the genitive) indicates being at someone's house.

Idem k Rudolfu.	<i>I am going round to Rudolf's</i> (to see Rudolf).
Sad sam kod Rudolfa.	<i>Now I am at Rudolf's.</i>

The expression **kod nas** may also mean *in our country*.

Note the difference between the following two expressions (**kuća** = *house, home*):

Rudolf je kod kuće.	<i>Rudolf is at home.</i> (stationary)
Rudolf ide kući.	<i>Rudolf is going home.</i> (movement)

Other prepositions followed by the genitive are:

bez	<i>without</i>
blizu	<i>near</i>
do	<i>to, as far as</i>
iz	<i>out of, from</i>
preko puta	<i>opposite</i>

and followed by the dative:

prema	<i>towards.</i>
-------	-----------------

► First, second, etc.

In addition to the numbers discussed before, there are others which are not used in counting but in ordering things (*first, second, etc.*). They are called ordinal numbers. In Croatian they

are all adjectives and so agree in number, case and gender with the noun which they describe:

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
prvi	prva	prvo	<i>first</i>
drugi	druga	drugo	<i>second</i>
treći	treća	treće	<i>third</i>
četvrti	četvrta	četvrto	<i>fourth</i>
peti	peta	peto	<i>fifth</i>
šesti	-a	-o	<i>sixth</i>
sedmi	-a	-o	<i>seventh</i>
osmi	-a	-o	<i>eighth</i>
deveti	-a	-o	<i>ninth</i>
deseti	-a	-o	<i>tenth</i>

The pattern is then repeated by simply adding an adjective ending on the following numbers (*jedanaesti, dvanaesti, trinaesti, etc.*).

Practice

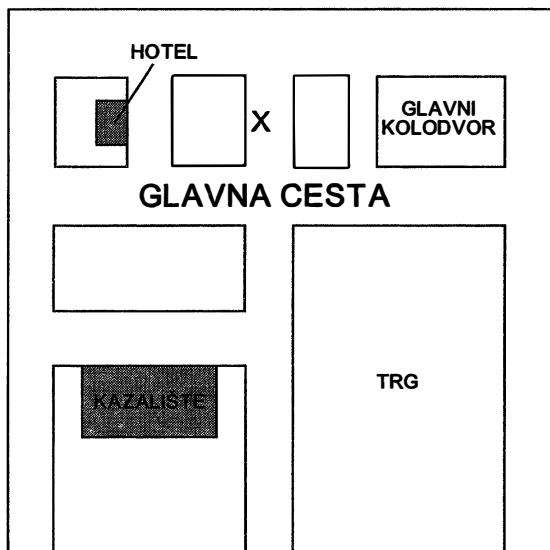
- Choose the correct command from the pair given (the first verb is always the imperfective):
 - Pij/Popij mlijeko svaki dan.
 - Pijte/Popijte čašu vode odmah.
 - Dolazi/Dođi k meni danas.
 - Uzimajte/Uzмите tramvaj dvadeset četiri.
- Choose the correct form of the infinitive:
 - Moraš silaziti/sići na trećoj stanici.
 - Volim piti/popiti mlijeko.
 - Želim dolaziti/doći k tebi sutra.
 - Hoćete li mi davati/dati čašu vina?
- Put the noun or nouns in the brackets in the correct case after the preposition:
 - Sutra smo kod (Mark i Sandra).
 - Autobus ide prema (centar) grada.
 - Autobus ide u (centar) grada.
 - Autobus je u (centar) grada.
 - Idite ravno do (trg).
 - Gradska kavana se nalazi na (trg).

- g** Dođite iz (hotel) do (restoran).
- h** On sutra ide na (večera).
- i** Njegov stan je blizu (kolodvor).
- j** Rudolf stoji ispod (drvo) u (park) preko puta (stanica).

Put the noun or nouns in the brackets in the correct case according to the uses of cases:

- a** Konobar daje (Jasna) (salata).
- b** Idemo u Zagreb (autobus).
- c** Trafalgar Square se nalazi u centru (London).
- d** (Konobar)! Želimo naručiti večeru.
- e** Sandra mora pisati (Mark).

5 Look at the diagram below. You are at the spot marked X.



You see a man walking towards you. Stop him and ask if he knows the way to the theatre. How would he describe to you:

- a** the way to the theatre?
- b** the way to the Main Station?
- c** the way to the hotel?
- d** the way to the square?

- ▶ 6 Fill in the missing parts of the dialogue:

I want to invite you to my place today.

Ne mogu. Moram danas ići k mami.

I am sorry. Can you come tomorrow?

Dobro. Kada?

At eight o'clock.

Kako mogu doći k vama?

Take the bus number 14 or the tram number 6 opposite the park and get out at the seventh stop. My flat is in the block opposite the theatre.

Dajte mi, molim vas, vašu adresu i telefonski broj.

My address is ... My telephone number is...

- 7 Replace the nouns in brackets with the appropriate pronoun. Take care to use the long or short form as appropriate and to use the correct word order:

a Idemo k (Marku).

b Konobar daje (ribu) (Sandri).

c Gledamo (ljude) na ulici.

d Idite do (kolodvora).

e Moram kupiti (razglednice).

f (Mark i Sandra) moraju pisati (prijateljima).

g Rudolf stanuje blizu (centra grada).

h (Ljudi) piju (kavu).

▶ Comprehension 1

Zvonko poziva Velimira na ručak.

Zvonko Velimire, dođi sutra k meni na ručak.

Velimir Na žalost, ne mogu. Moram sa ženom ići u grad. Moramo kupiti poklon za njenu mamu.

Zvonko Dovedi i ženu na ručak.

Velimir Ne znam. Ona uvijek kaže da je teško doći do tebe. Ti stanuješ daleko od glavne ceste.

Zvonko Žao mi je. Možete li doći taksijem?

Velimir Možemo. Znaš, kad idemo k tebi, moramo ići u centar tramvajem, onda uzeti autobus. Možemo doći taksijem direktno iz centra grada.

Zvonko Dobro. Drago mi je, dođite onda u tri.

Velimir Hvala lijepo.

Zvonko Molim lijepo. Do viđenja.

Velimir Do viđenja, do sutra.

na žalost	<i>unfortunately</i>
poklon	<i>present</i>
Dovedi i ženu.	<i>Bring your wife too.</i>
uvijek	<i>always</i>
teško	<i>difficult</i>
kaže da... (kazati, kažem)	<i>he/she says that...</i>
direktno	<i>directly</i>
u tri	<i>at three (o'clock)</i>
do sutra	<i>until tomorrow</i>

True or false?

- a Zvonko poziva Velimira na večeru.
 b Velimir ide sutra na posao.
 c Velimir i njegova žena mogu doći taksijem.

Comprehension 2

Read the following passage and answer the questions below.

U gradovima u Europi čovjek danas vidi tramvaje i autobuse na ulicama. Tramvaji i autobusi voze svugdje. Tramvajem ili autobusom ljudi idu na posao i k prijateljima. Gradski transport je jedan veliki sistem. Spaja jednu stranu grada s drugom. Spaja ljude s poslom, s prijateljima, s centrom grada i s mjestima gdje se ljudi skupljaju. Naravno, nije uvijek lako putovati po gradu. Neki ljudi stanuju daleko od centra. Živjeti tamo nije lako. Teško je doći u grad. Ali neki ljudi vole stanovati daleko od grada. Život je miran kada čovjek ne gleda stalno ljude na ulicama.

Europa	<i>Europe</i>
svugdje	<i>everywhere</i>
sistem	<i>system</i>
spaja	<i>it links</i>
jednu stranu	<i>(acc.) one side</i>
gdje se ljudi skupljaju	<i>where people gather together</i>
naravno	<i>of course</i>
po gradu	<i>around the town</i>
život	<i>life</i>
miran	<i>quiet, peaceful</i>

- 1 Što vidi čovjek u gradovima danas?
 - a Vidi taksije.
 - b Vidi tramvaje i autobuse.
 - c Vidi samoposluge.
- 2 Kamo idu ljudi tramvajem ili autobusom?
 - a U hotel.
 - b Na posao i k prijateljima.
 - c Na poštu.
- 3 Gdje je život miran?
 - a U predgrađu.
 - b Na Glavnom kolodvoru.
 - c U centru grada.

07

**koliko imate
godina?**
how old are you?

In this unit you will learn how to

- **give and ask for more personal information concerning age, marital status, occupation, where you are from, and about other members of your family**

▶ Dialogue

Rudolf ulazi u stan s Markom i Sandrom. Njegova majka je u sobi.

Rudolf Da vas upoznam. Ovo je moja majka. Mama, ovo su moji prijatelji. Zovu se Sandra i Mark.

Sandra Drago mi je. Ja sam Sandra.

Mark Drago mi je, gospođo. Ja sam Mark Bryant.

Majka Drago mi je, gospođo i gospodine. Sjednite, molim vas.

Mark i Rudolf izlaze iz sobe. Majka i Sandra razgovaraju.

Majka Odakle ste vi, Sandra?

Sandra Ja sam iz Engleske.

Majka A gdje žive vaši roditelji?

Sandra Žive u Londonu.

Majka Imate li brata ili sestru?

Sandra Imam sestru. Ona živi s roditeljima. Cijela moja obitelj živi u Londonu. Mark ima brata.

Majka Gdje on živi?

Sandra Njegov brat živi u Njemačkoj, u Berlinu. Radi tamo i oženjen je Njemicom.

Majka Koliko dugo ste vi u braku?

Sandra U braku smo već osam godina.

Majka Moj Rudolf je još uvijek samac. Vrijeme je da se oženi, ali se Jasna neće udati... Sandra, koliko imate godina?

Sandra Imam trideset pet godina.

Majka A koliko ima vaš muž?

Sandra Ima trideset sedam godina.

Majka Moj Rudolf ima trideset devet godina. Radi već deset godina u istoj firmi. Imate li posao?

Sandra Imam. Radim kao učiteljica u školi kod nas. Mark prodaje opremu za kompjutore i urede. On je predstavnik svoje firme u Zagrebu. Moja mama je računovođa, a tata radi u banci. Markov otac je mehaničar.

majka	<i>mother</i>
soba	<i>room</i>
zovu se	<i>they are called</i>
sjednite (sjesti, sjednem)	<i>sit down</i>
razgovaraju (razgovarati, razgovaram)	<i>they talk, chat</i>
Odakle ste vi?	<i>Where are you from?</i>

roditelj	<i>parent</i>
brat	<i>brother</i>
sestra	<i>sister</i>
cijeli, cijela, cijelo	<i>whole</i>
obitelj (fem.)	<i>family</i>
u Njemačkoj	<i>in Germany</i>
Oženjen je Njemicom.	<i>He is married to a German (woman).</i>
koliko dugo...	<i>(for) how long...</i>
u braku	<i>married (Lit. in marriage)</i>
već	<i>already</i>
godina	<i>year</i>
još uvijek	<i>still</i>
samac	<i>bachelor</i>
Vrijeme je da...	<i>It is time that...</i>
oženiti se	<i>to get married (of male)</i>
udati se	<i>to get married (of female)</i>
u istoj firmi	<i>in the same firm</i>
Koliko imate godina?	<i>How old are you?</i>
Imam trideset pet godina.	<i>I am 35.</i>
oprema za kompjutore	<i>equipment for computers</i>
predstavnik	<i>a representative</i>
firma	<i>firm, company</i>
računovođa	<i>accountant</i>
tata	<i>Dad</i>
u banci (nom. banka)	<i>in a bank</i>
Markov otac	<i>Mark's father</i>
mehaničar	<i>mechanic</i>

True or false?

- a Sandra ima trideset jednu godinu.
- b Markov brat živi u Njemačkoj.
- c Markov tata je računovođa.

i Gosti

To be invited as a guest (**gost**) in a family home is to be treated with all the hospitality which could be wished for. The problem is often how to refuse the excessive zeal with which food is put on plates. There are a number of phrases which can be repeated like, **Ne, hvala, ne mogu više** *No, thank you, I can't any more*. Perhaps you could add a little later **stvarno, ne mogu više** *really, I can't any more*. As for drink, if you don't want any more simply keep your glass full. Although

the word **gost** is monosyllabic its plural form is **gosti** (without the **-ov-** typical of other such words like **grad/gradovi**).

Obitelj

The names of the members of the family which you have met so far are:

muž *husband*

otac *father*

tata *Dad*

brat *brother*

žena *wife*

majka *mother*

mama *Mum*

sestra *sister*

You will find more in the last section of this unit. The word **obitelj** is slightly unusual in that although it ends in a consonant it is a feminine word (like **stvar**).

▶ Key phrases

How to:

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| • ask where someone is from,
and say where you are from. | Odakle ste vi?
Ja sam iz... |
| • ask how long someone has
been married. | Koliko dugo ste u braku? |
| • say if you are married. | Već smo osam godina u braku. |
| • say <i>to get married</i> (of a man),
and <i>he is married</i> . | oženiti se
oženjen je |
| • say <i>to get married</i> (of a woman),
and <i>she is married</i> . | udati se
udata je |
| • say that <i>you are married</i>
(man speaking),
or <i>not married</i> . | Oženjen sam. |
| • say that <i>you are married</i>
(woman speaking),
or <i>not married</i> . | Nisam oženjen. |
| • ask if someone is married. | Udata sam. |
| | Nisam udata. |
| | Jeste li oženjeni?
Jeste li udati? |

There are two ways of saying you are married depending on whether you are a man or a woman. A man would use the verb **oženiti se** and a woman the verb **udati se**. They must not be mixed.

How to:

- ask about age –

How old are you?

I am...

How old is your husband?

My husband is...

Koliko imate godina?

Imam...

Koliko ima godina vaš muž?

Moj muž ima...

How it works

Adjectives

You have already seen a variety of adjective endings in previous units. Your attention has not been drawn to them because we were concentrating on nouns and verbs.

There is a basic similarity in adjective and noun endings, but there are things to watch for. Look at the following patterns for the nominative singular:

Masc.

Hotel je star.

The hotel is old.

Fem.

Kava je vruća.

The coffee is hot.

Neut.

Kazalište je lijepo.

The theatre is beautiful.

However, notice that the masculine ending is not always a consonant, but may be **-i**:

Ovo je dobar hotel.

This is a good hotel.

Ovo je taj stari čovjek.

This is the old man.

You add **-i** to the masculine nominative case in order to add the meaning of *the*. This is the only instance in which this happens.

Several adjectives only exist in this **-i** form. For example, **prvi** and other ordinal numbers.

There are a number of adjectives to which you may *not* add **-i**. For example, **moj**, **njegov** (and the other possessive adjectives), **jedan**, etc.

The ending without **-i** is always used in the following pattern:

Hotel je star.

The hotel is old.

(‘something’ *is* ‘something’)

So far you have mostly seen the nominative and accusative adjective case endings. These endings in both the singular and the plural are similar to the endings for the nouns:

Singular	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
nom.	star(i)	stara	staro
acc.	star(i)	staru	staro
nom.	vruč(i)	vruća	vruće
acc.	vruč(i)	vruću	vruće
Plural	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
nom.	stari	stare	stara
acc.	stare	stare	stara
nom.	vrući	vruće	vruća
acc.	vruće	vruće	vruća

U Njemačkoj (dative case of adjectives)

When Sandra says that Mark's brother lives in Germany (**u Njemačkoj**), she uses the dative case of the word for Germany. In principle it is no different from saying that he works in a school (**u školi**). However, the word for Germany is an adjective **Njemačka**. It behaves like an adjective with feminine endings. There are a number of names for countries which behave similarly:

Engleska	<i>England</i>	u Engleskoj
Francuska	<i>France</i>	u Francuskoj
Poljska	<i>Poland</i>	u Poljskoj
Danska	<i>Denmark</i>	u Danskoj
Hrvatska	<i>Croatia</i>	u Hrvatskoj
Škotska	<i>Scotland</i>	u Škotskoj
Irska	<i>Ireland</i>	u Irskoj

Not all the names of countries behave in this way, for example:

Italija	<i>Italy</i>	u Italiji
Rusija	<i>Russia</i>	u Rusiji
Amerika	<i>America</i>	u Americi
Srbija	<i>Serbia</i>	u Srbiji

The endings for dative adjectives are:

Masc.	add -om (or -em to a word ending in a soft consonant)
dobar	dobrom

lijep	lijepom
vruć	vrućem

Fem. add -oj

dobra	dobroj
lijepa	lijepoj
vruća	vrućoj

Neut. add -om (or -em to a word ending in a soft consonant)

dobro	dobrom
lijepo	lijepom
vruće	vrućem

The plural ending is -im in all genders:

dobri	dobrim
lijepi	lijepim
vrući	vrućim

Look at the following examples:

Masc.

lijep grad
u lijepom gradu

*a beautiful town
in a beautiful town*

Fem.

vruća kava
u vrućoj kavi

*hot coffee
in hot coffee*

Neut.

dobro kazalište
u dobrom kazalištu

*a good theatre
in a good theatre*

Plural

lijepi gradovi
u lijepim gradovima

*beautiful towns
in beautiful towns*

Iz Engleske (genitive case of adjectives)

In answer to the question **Odakle ste vi?** you say **Ja sam iz Engleske.** You are using the preposition **iz** *from* followed by the genitive case of the name of the country, which is an adjective:

The endings for genitive adjectives are:

Masc. add -og (or -eg to a word ending in a soft consonant)

dobar	dobrog
lijep	lijepog
vruć	vrućeg

Fem. add -e

dobra	dobre
lijepa	lijepo
vruća	vruće

Neut. add -og (or -eg to a word ending in a soft consonant)

dobro	dobrog
lijepo	lijepog
vruće	vrućeg

The plural ending is **-ih** in all genders:

dobri	dobrih
lijepi	lijepih
vrući	vrućih

Study the following examples:

Ja sam iz Njemačke.

I am from Germany.

Rudolf izlazi iz visoke zgrade.

Rudolf is coming out of the tall building.

Mark izlazi iz starog kazališta.

Mark is coming out of the old theatre.

U Zagrebu ima lijepih parkova.

There are some nice parks in Zagreb.

Remember that the accusative case for masculine nouns which denote persons or animals is the same as the genitive. Adjectives which agree with these nouns also have an accusative case which is the same as the genitive. Compare the following:

Vidim lijepi park.

I see the nice park.

Vidim starog čovjeka.

I see the old man.

Mark's father (possession)

You can make adjectives from personal names:

for a man's name add -ov

Mark	Markov
Rudolf	Rudolfov
Zvonko	Zvonkov

for a woman's name replace -a with -in

Sandra	Sandrin
Jasna	Jasnin

These adjectives never take the -i ending in the masculine. These words are just like other adjectives:

Ovo je Markova majka.

This is Mark's mother.

Izlaze iz Jasnine kuće.

*They are coming out of
Jasna's house.*

Ovo je Rudolfovo pivo.

This is Rudolf's beer.

Use of svoj

Look at the following sentence in English:

He is taking his money.

There is a possibility of ambiguity, because the word *his* may refer to *his own* or to *somebody else's* money. In Croatian you distinguish between these two meanings of *his*:

On uzima svoj novac. (his own)

On uzima njegov novac. (somebody else's)

When the person who possesses the object is the same as the one who also performs the action you use the possessive adjective *svoj*. Look at the following examples:

On daje jelo svojoj ženi. *He gives the dish to his wife.*

On daje jelo njegovoj ženi. *He gives the dish to his
(i.e. not his own) wife.*

Oni gledaju svoju kuću. *They are looking at their house.*

Oni gledaju njihovu kuću. *They are looking at their
(i.e. belonging to someone else)
house.*

On uzima svoj kaput. *He takes his coat.*

kaput *coat*

Njegov kaput je tamo. *His coat is there (i.e. the coat
is his own but the subject of
the sentence is his coat).*

Svoj follows the same pattern as *moj* and other adjectives which end in a soft consonant.

► Numbers (20–99)

For numbers above 20, simply combine the numerals:

dvadeset jedan	21	pedeset	50
dvadeset dva/dvije	22	pedeset pet	55
dvadeset tri	23	šezdeset	60
dvadeset pet	25	šezdeset tri	63
dvadeset osam	28	sedamdeset	70
dvadeset devet	29	sedamdeset šest	76
trideset	30	osamdeset	80
trideset jedan	31	osamdeset jedan	81
trideset četiri	34	devedeset	90
trideset šest	36	devedeset devet	99
trideset sedam	37		
četrdeset	40		

The word which follows the number follows the same pattern as for the earlier numbers:

...jedan (singular)
 dvadeset jedan čovjek 21 *people*

The word after **jedan** is always singular even when used in combination with other numbers, and **jedan** behaves like an adjective:

dvadeset jedna kuća 21 *houses*

...**dva/dvije, tri, četiri** (genitive singular)
 trideset dva čovjeka 32 *people*
 trideset dvije žene 32 *women*
 osamdeset četiri godine 84 *years*

...**pet, šest, sedam**, etc. (genitive plural)
 pedeset sedam stolova 57 *tables*
 devedeset devet ljudi 99 *people*

The ordinal numbers (*twentieth*, etc.) are adjectives:

dvadeseti, dvadeseta, dvadeseto *twentieth*
 trideseti, trideseta, trideseto *thirtieth*

In compound numbers only the last number is treated as an adjective:

dvadeset prvi *twenty-first*
 trideset deveti *thirty-ninth*

Use of već

When in English you use the past tense to ask *How long have you been married?*, in Croatian you use the present tense and include the word *već* *already*: *Koliko dugo ste već u braku?*

Koliko dugo ste u braku? How long have you been married?

U braku smo već osam godina. We have been married for eight years.

Unusual categories of nouns

a Look at the pattern of case endings for **otac**:

	singular	plural
nom.	otac	očevi
voc.	oče	očevi
acc.	oca	očeve
gen.	oca	očeva
dat.	ocu	očevima
ins.	ocem	očevima

It is effected by the spelling rules of Croatian.

The penultimate **a** between two consonants drops out when case endings are added.

The letter **t** is the same sound as the beginning of **c** (**ts**) and this is treated as a double consonant. Double consonants are rarely tolerated and so the first **t** is also omitted.

It has a plural which is regular in its case pattern but with a stem of **očev-**.

b Nijemac: the penultimate **a**, normally lost from masculine nouns with their case endings, returns in the genitive plural form:

<i>dva Nijemca</i>	<i>two Germans</i> (gen. singular)
<i>pet Nijemaca</i>	<i>five Germans</i> (gen. plural)

The **a** returns in the genitive plural form only with all such nouns.

c Tata is unusual in that the word looks feminine (like *kava* or *žena*) and it changes according to the regular pattern for such nouns. However, adjectives take the corresponding masculine endings because the word refers to a masculine person. Study the following examples:

Naš stari tata je u sobi.
Vidim starog tatu.

*Our old dad is in the room.
I see the old dad.*

Koliko imate godina?

The word **koliko** means *how much* or *how many*. It is followed by the genitive case like other words of quantity (such as **mного**). Remember the word order in the question *How old are you?*:

Koliko imate godina?

Practice

- 1 Fill in the missing adjective from the list given below (all the adjectives are given with the correct case ending and each is therefore appropriate to just one sentence):

- a Hotel je _____
- b Dan je _____
- c Riba je _____
- d Meso je _____
- e Jasna je _____
- f Razglednica je _____
- g Vino je _____
- h Zgrada je _____

star velika žedna bijelo svježa vruć odlično skupa

- 2 Add the correct case ending to the adjectives in the sentences below:

- a Spomenik je u lijep___ parku.
- b Čovjek izlazi iz velik___ pošte.
- c Koverta nisu skup___.
- d Skrenite u treć___ ulicu desno.
- e Izlazi iz star___ hotela.
- f Jasna hoće kupiti velik___ razglednice.
- g Idemo na Glavn___ Kolodvor.
- h Pijemo dobr___ kavu u Gradsk___ kavani.

- 3 Make up sentences from the information given below as indicated:

John Englez Engleska banka
 John je Englez.
 Živi u Engleskoj.
 Radi u banci.

- a Pierre Francuz Francuska ured
 b Vjekoslav Hrvat Hrvatska restoran
 c Branka Srkinja Srbija hotel
 d Maša Ruskinja Rusija škola
- 4 Change the name in brackets into an adjective and supply the correct case ending:

- a Milivoj živi u (Branka) stanu.
 b On izlazi iz (Mark) sobe.
 c Gledamo (Sandra) sestru.
 d (Mark) brat živi u Njemačkoj.
 e (Rudolf) ured je u centru grada.
 f Ulazimo u (Velimir) školu.

- ▶ 5 Complete the missing part of the dialogue:

Are you married, Rudolf?

Ne, nisam oženjen.

Is Jasna married?

Ne, nije udata.

- 6 Match the questions to the answers:

- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| a Da li je ovo vaša kava? | i Vidim ga. |
| b Da li je Jasna udata? | ii Ne, to je moja. |
| c Gdje je Rudolfova majka? | iii Sjedi u svojoj sobi. |
| d Da li vidite Marka? | iv Nije. |

- ▶ 7 Supply in words the numbers given in numerals:

22, 47, 64, 29, 17, 11, 43, 38, 77, 58, 90, 61.

Comprehension 1

Sandrina sestra živi u Londonu s roditeljima. Ima dvadeset jednu godinu. Studira medicinu na sveučilištu u Londonu. Želi postati liječnica.

Markov brat živi u Berlinu. On je vojnik. Njegova žena je Njemica iz Frankfurta. Markov brat ima trideset godina, a njegova žena dvadeset devet. Imaju sina i kćerku. Sin ima pet godina, a kćerka tri.

studirati, studiram	<i>study</i>
medicina	<i>medicine</i>
sveučilište	<i>university</i>
postati	<i>become</i>
liječnica	<i>doctor (woman)</i>
vojnik	<i>soldier</i>
sin	<i>son</i>
kćerka	<i>daughter</i>

True or false?

- a Sandrina sestra ima dvadeset dvije godine.
- b Žena Markovog brata je Njemica.
- c Njihov sin ima pet godina.

Comprehension 2

Read the following passage and answer the questions below:

Rudolf govori Marku o svojoj obitelji. Brat njegove majke je njegov ujak. Njegova žena je Rudolfova ujna. Brat njegovog tate je njegov stric. Njegova žena je Rudolfova strina. Rudolfovi roditelji imaju i sestre. Sestre majke i oca su Rudolfove tetke. Njihovi muževi su Rudolfovi teci – to znači da ako je tetka udata, njen muž je Rudolfov tetak. Dijete jednog ujaka, strica ili tetke je Rudolfov brat ili sestra. Kaže se da je brat od strica, ili sestra od tetke. Koliko Mark razumije obiteljske odnose?

ujak	<i>uncle</i>
ujna	<i>aunt (his wife)</i>
stric	<i>uncle</i>
strina	<i>aunt (his wife)</i>
tetka	<i>aunt</i>
tetak	<i>uncle (her husband)</i>
to znači	<i>that means</i>
ako	<i>if</i>
kaže se	<i>it is said, one says</i>
obiteljski odnosi	<i>family relations</i>

Brat Rudolfovog oca je...

- a Rudolfov stric.
- b Rudolfov ujak.
- c Rudolfov brat od tetke.

Sestra Rudolfove majke je...

- a Rudolfova tetka.
- b Rudolfova strina.
- c Rudolfova ujna.

Žena Rudolfovog strica je...

- a Rudolfova strina.
- b Rudolfova sestra.
- c sestra Rudolfove majke.

08

kakav stan imate?

what kind of flat do you have?

In this unit you will learn how to

- **describe a room, your house or flat**
- **describe your day's routine**
- **use more question words**
- **tell the time**
- **use expressions for the divisions of the day**

► Dialogue

Sandra i Mark su na večeri kod Rudolfa. Rudolf pokazuje Marku stan. U dnevnoj sobi su dva naslonjača, veliki kauč i dva stolića za kavu. Namještaj je udoban. U uglu je televizor. Oni izlaze iz dnevne sobe, dok Sandra razgovara s Rudolfovom majkom.

Mark Kakav stan imate? Koliko imate u stanu soba?

Rudolf Imamo četiri sobe, kupaonicu i kuhinju. Ovo je blagovaonica. Vidite da u sredini stoji veliki stol. Oko njega su stolice. Kroz vrata vidite kuhinju gdje su frižider, zamrzivač i ormari. U ormarima su tanjuri, šalice, vilice, noževi, žlice i tave.

Mark Koliko spavaćih soba imate?

Rudolf Imamo dvije. Ovo je mamina soba, a to je moja. Moja soba je velika. To je i moja radna soba. Tamo imam kompjutor, radni stol i police s knjigama.

pokazuje Marku	<i>he shows to Mark</i>
(pokazivati, pokazuje)	
dnevna soba	<i>living room</i>
naslonjač	<i>armchair</i>
kauč	<i>couch</i>
stolić	<i>little table</i>
namještaj	<i>furniture</i>
udoban	<i>comfortable</i>
dok	<i>while</i>
Kakav imate stan?	<i>What kind of flat do you have?</i>
Koliko imate soba?	<i>How many rooms do you have?</i>
kupaonica	<i>bathroom</i>
kuhinja	<i>kitchen</i>
blagovaonica	<i>dining room</i>
u sredini	<i>in the middle</i>
stoji (stojati, stojim)	<i>he/she/it is standing</i>
oko njega	<i>around it</i>
stolica	<i>chair</i>
kroz vrata	<i>through the door</i>
frižider	<i>fridge</i>
zamrzivač	<i>freezer</i>
ormar	<i>cupboard</i>
tanjur	<i>plate</i>
šalica	<i>cup</i>
vilica	<i>fork</i>

	nož	<i>knife</i>
	žlica	<i>spoon</i>
	tava	<i>saucepan</i>
	spavaća soba	<i>bedroom</i>
	radna soba	<i>study (work room)</i>
	radni stol	<i>desk</i>
	polica s knjigama	<i>bookshelf</i>
	knjiga	<i>book</i>

Sandra i Rudolfova majka razgovaraju. Majka je pita o njenom životu u Londonu.

Majka U koliko sati počinje vaš radni dan?

Sandra Počinje u sedam sati kad obično ustajem. Stižem u školu oko osam i pol i radim od deset do devet do podne.

Majka Imate li pauzu?

Sandra Imamo pauzu prije podne. Ta pauza traje dvadeset minuta. Imamo i pauzu za ručak. Poslije ručka škola počinje u jedan i petnaest. Kao i prije podne, učenici imaju četiri sata sa pauzom poslije drugog sata.

Majka To znači da se škola završava oko četiri sata.

Sandra Da, onda idem kući. Kod kuće obično večeram s Markom oko pola osam.

	o	<i>about (preposition followed by dat.)</i>
	u koliko sati	<i>at what time</i>
	počinjati, počinjem	<i>to begin</i>
	obično	<i>usually</i>
	ustajati, ustajem	<i>to get up</i>
	stizati, stižem	<i>to arrive</i>
	oko osam i pol	<i>about half past eight</i>
	deset do devet	<i>ten to nine</i>
	podne	<i>midday</i>
	pauza	<i>pause, break</i>
	trajati, traje	<i>to last</i>
	prije podne	<i>in the morning (before noon)</i>
	poslije ručka	<i>after lunch</i>
	poslije (preposition followed by gen.)	<i>after</i>
	jedan i petnaest	<i>quarter past one</i>
	učenik	<i>pupil</i>

sat	<i>hour, o'clock, class, lesson</i>
završavati se	<i>to finish</i>
oko četiri sata	<i>about four o'clock</i>
oko pola osam	<i>about half past seven</i>

True or false?

- a Rudolf i njegova majka imaju dvije spavaće sobe.
- b Veliki stol je u kuhinji.
- c Poslije ručka Sandrina škola počinje u jedan i pet.

i Housing

Most people in big cities live in flats. Huge building programmes began after the Second World War which have resulted in the creation of new districts (**naselja**). Zagreb has areas built since the war which have extended the city boundaries far beyond their original limits. These areas are, in fact, called Novi Zagreb. In villages it is more common to find the road lined with family houses rather than the typically urban blocks (**blokovi**).

▶ Key phrases

How to:

- describe rooms in your house/flat. **kupaonica**
kuhinja
dnevna soba
blagovaonica
spavaća soba
radna soba
- show someone round your house/flat. **pokazivati stan Marku (dat.).**
- name some divisions of the day. **prije podne**
podne
- ask/say at what time something happens. **U koliko sati?/U sedam sati.**
- give an approximate time. **Oko pola osam.**

How it works

Adjectives (instrumental case)

Look at this example of an adjective used in the instrumental case after the preposition s:

Sandra govori s njegovom majkom. *Sandra speaks with his mother.*

The endings for adjectives in the instrumental are:

Masc. add -im

dobar	dobrim
lijep	lijepim
moj	mojim

Fem. add -om

dobra	dobrom
lijepa	lijepom
moja	mojom

Neut. add -im

dobro	dobrim
lijepo	lijepim
moje	mojim

The plural ending is -im in all genders:

dobri	dobrim
lijepi	lijepim
moji	mojim

▶ Telling the time

In official contexts, such as railway timetables, the 24-hour clock is used. Thus,

dva sata i pet minuta



pet sati i petnaest minuta



deset sati i dvadeset minuta



četrnaest sati i četrdeset minuta



dvadeset sati i pedeset pet minuta



In most everyday circumstances a different system is used.

Minutes past the hour:

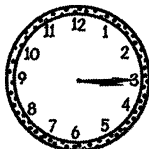
Here the pattern resembles the 24-hour clock:



jedan (sat) i pet (minuta)



dva (sata) i
deset (minuta)



tri (sata) i
petnaest
(minuta)



pet (sati) i
dvadeset pet
(minuta)



šest (sati) i
trideset (minuta)

The words for hours and minutes are usually omitted. Here, they have been put in brackets. After **jedan** the word for hour is in the nominative (**sat**), after **dva**, **tri** and **četiri** in the genitive singular (**sata**) and after the other numbers in the genitive plural (**sati**). The word for *minute* is **minuta**.

Alternative ways of expressing *half past the hour*:

- a** 4.30 četiri i pol
9.30 devet i pol
- b** 5.30 pola šest
11.30 pola dvanaest

(In this way you are saying: *It is now half of the sixth, twelfth hour*)

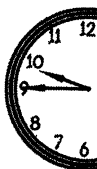
Minutes to the hour:



dvadeset pet do osam



dvadeset do devet



petnaest do deset



deset do jedanaest



pet do dvanaest

▶ What time is it now?

Koliko je sada sati?

What time is it now?

To state the time simply put **Sada je...** in front of the time:

Sada je jedan sat.

It is now one o'clock.

Sada je tri i petnaest.

It is now quarter past three.

Sada je šest i pol.

It is now half past six.

Sada je pola sedam.

It is now half past six.

Sada je deset do dvanaest.

It is now ten to twelve.

To give an approximate time add **oko**:

Sada je oko šest.

It's about six. (It's sixish.)

Sada je oko pola jedanaest.

It's about half ten.

▶ At what time?

U koliko sati...

At what time...

To say *at what time...* put **u** before the time:

u pet sati

at five o'clock

u šest i pol

at six thirty

u deset do dvanaest

at ten to twelve

u dvanaest

at twelve o'clock

u podne

at noon

To give an approximate time, again use **oko**, but without **u**:

oko osam sati

at about eight o'clock

oko tri i dvadeset

at about twenty past three

oko petnaest do pet

at about quarter to five

To say *from... to...* use *od... do...*:

od pet do šest
od petnaest do sedam
do osam sati

from five to six o'clock
from quarter to seven
to eight o'clock

jutro	<i>morning</i>	večer	<i>evening</i>
jutros	<i>this morning</i>	večeras	<i>this evening</i>
ujutro	<i>in the morning</i>	uvečer	<i>in the evening</i>
		(or navečer)	
prije podne	<i>morning</i>	poslije podne	<i>afternoon</i>
dan	<i>day</i>	noć	<i>night</i>
danas	<i>today</i>	noćas	<i>tonight</i>
danju	<i>during the day</i>	noću	<i>at night</i>
podne (u podne)	<i>noon</i>	ponoć (u ponoć)	<i>midnight</i>

Divisions of the day

po podne is often used instead of **poslije podne**

The following are approximate times:

jutro: 6 a.m. to 10 a.m.; dan: 10 a.m. to 6 p.m.;
večer: 6 p.m. to 12 p.m.; noć: 12 p.m. to 6 a.m.

Take care not to invite someone to meet you **noćas**, when you really mean **večeras**!

The divisions of the day are used to clarify time by the clock:

osam sati ujutro	<i>eight o'clock in the morning</i>
deset sati prije podne	<i>nine o'clock in the morning</i>
u četiri poslije podne	<i>at four in the afternoon</i>
u šest i pol večeras	<i>at half past six this evening</i>

You can add to these divisions of the day with the following:

prekjučer	<i>day before yesterday</i>
jučer	<i>yesterday</i>
sinoć	<i>last night</i>
sutra	<i>tomorrow</i>
prekosutra	<i>day after tomorrow</i>

u šest sati sutra ujutro
u sedam i petnaest sinoć
oko tri poslije podne
prekjučer

at six o'clock tomorrow morning
at quarter past seven last night
at about three in the afternoon
the day before yesterday

More prepositions

1 followed by the accusative:

kroz *through*

Idem kroz kuću

I'm going through the house.

2 followed by the genitive:

oko *around, about*

Gosti sjede oko stola.

The guests are sitting around the table.

poslije *after*

Škola počinje poslije ručka.

School begins after lunch.

3 followed by the dative:

o *about*

Govore o školi.

They are speaking about school.

Kakav

Kakav is an adjective, so it changes its ending according to the noun. It has two meanings:

a *What kind of...?*

Kakav naslonjač stoji u dnevnoj sobi?

What kind of an armchair stands in the living room?

Kakvu juhu više volite?

What kind of soup do you prefer?

Kakve knjige su na stolu?

What kind of books are on the table?

b *What a...!*

Kakav čovjek!

What a person!

Kakva kuća!

What a house!

This/that

Sandra says: Ta pauza traje dvadeset minuta. *That break lasts for 20 minutes.*

The adjectives meaning *this* and *that* are *ovaj*, *taj* and *onaj*. They do not have the masculine nominative ending with *-i*. Add endings for other genders and cases on to *ov-*, *t-* and *on-*:

Ulaze u **ovu** zgradu.

They are entering this building.

Vidite li **tog** čovjeka?

Do you see that man?

Novine se mogu kupiti u **onoj** prodavaonici na uglu.

One can buy newspapers in that shop on the corner.

Both *taj* and *onaj* mean *that*, with the difference that *onaj* refers to an object which is further away.

Unusual noun categories: Vrata door

Vrata is one of the words in Croatian which only exists in a plural form. It ends in -a, and it is neuter plural.

All adjectives and verbs agree with the neuter plural form of the word.

Vrata su lijepa.

Ideš kroz crna vrata u hodnik.

The door is beautiful.

You go through the black door into the corridor.

Novine also exists only in this feminine plural form, although it may refer to one, or more than one, newspaper:

To su dobre novine.

That is a good newspaper.

Practice

1 Choose the most appropriate adjective to fit the gaps in the following sentences. The adjectives are in the masculine nominative form, you will have to put them in the correct gender, case and number (i.e. singular or plural). You may use each adjective only once:

- a Nije daleko od _____ ceste do našeg bloka.
- b Ona govori sa _____ majkom u kuhinji.
- c Više volim _____ vino, ali mogu piti i bijelo.
- d Možemo ići pješice od hotela do _____ zgrada u centru grada.
- e Danas idemo u _____ školu, a ne u moju školu.
- f Gosti sjede na _____ stolicama u blagovaonici.

udoban tvoj glavan velik crn njegov

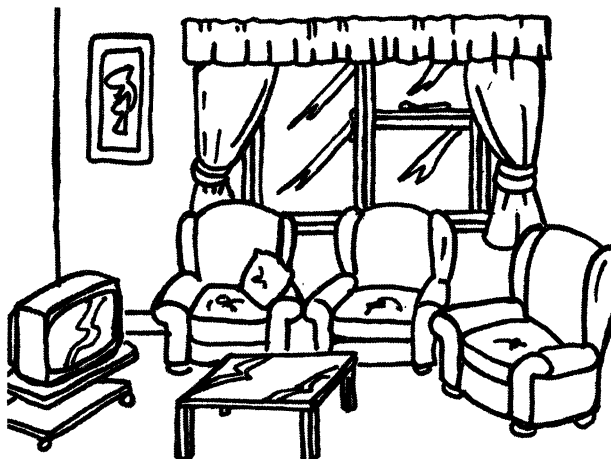
2 Choose the most appropriate preposition to fit the gaps in the following sentences. Make sure that you consider the case endings of the nouns and adjectives:

- a Idem kući _____ škole.
- b Radim od šest sati ujutro _____ tri poslije podne.
- c Pošta se nalazi _____ trgu.
- d Ideš _____ velika vrata tamo u njihov stan.
- e Jasna govori sa Rudolfovom majkom _____ kuće.
- f Oni izlazi _____ kavane u šest sati uvečer.

do iz na kroz kod poslije

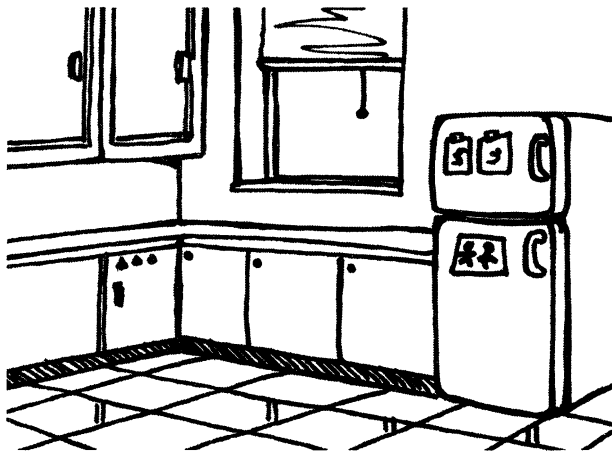
3 Answer the questions below by referring to the drawings:

a Kakav namještaj imate u dnevnoj sobi?



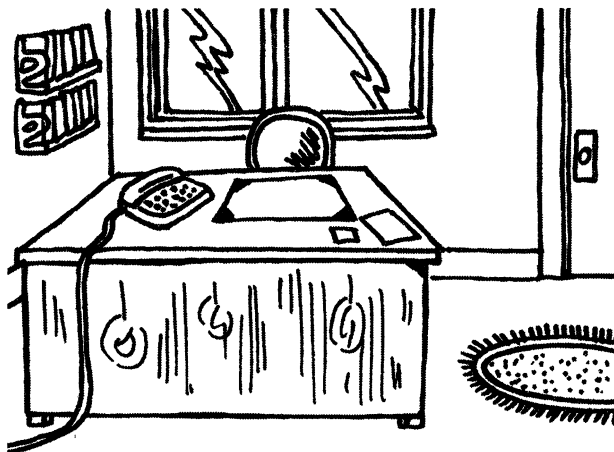
I have three armchairs, one small table and a television set in the corner.

b Što imate u kuhinji?



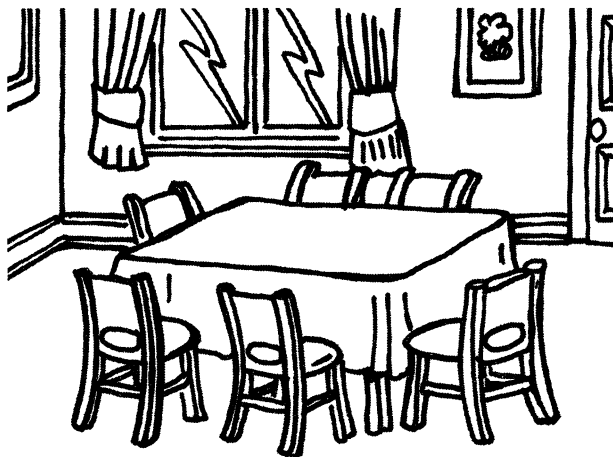
In the kitchen I have a fridge, a freezer and cupboards.

- c Radite li u spavaćoj sobi?
Da, moram raditi u spavaćoj sobi. Imam tamo...



a desk and two shelves for books

- d Kakav namještaj imate u blagovaonici?

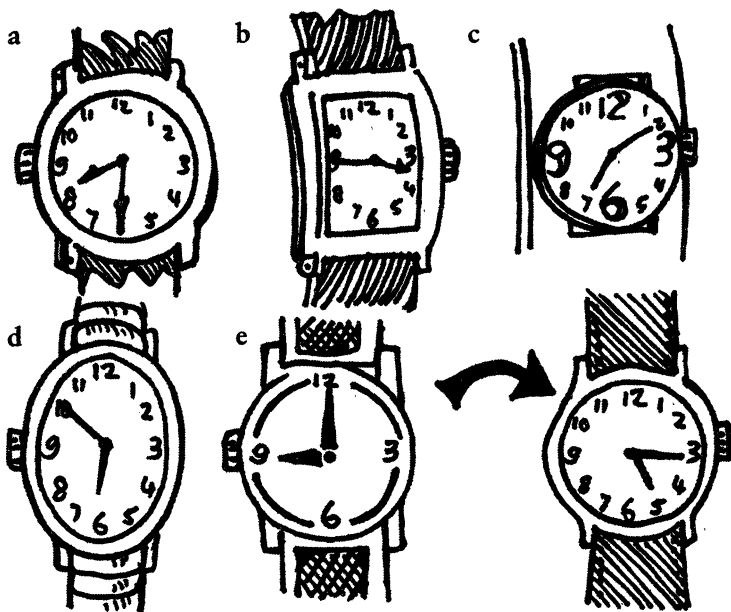


I have a large table and six chairs for guests.

4 Match the questions to the answers:

- | | | | |
|---|-------------------------------|-----|----------------------|
| a | Kakvu dnevnu sobu imate? | i | Počinje u sedam. |
| b | U koliko sati počinje film? | ii | Idem k tetki. |
| c | Što radite sutra? | iii | Jasna ne može doći. |
| d | Tko ne dolazi na ručak danas? | iv | Velika je sa stolom. |

5 Write out the times given below on the clock faces:



6 Fill in the gaps with the most appropriate divisions of the day from the box below.

- a Učenici počinju raditi u školi _____.
- b Idemo _____ u kazalište.
- c Autobusi ne idu kroz grad _____.
- d Danas i _____ idem k bratu.

sutra

večeras

prije podne

noću

► Comprehension 1

Jasna Kušan je sekretarica u velikoj zagrebačkoj firmi. Ovdje govori o svom tipičnom radnom danu.

Ustajem u pola sedam. Znam da je rano, ali moram se istuširati i popiti kavu prije posla. Na posao idem autobusom. Put traje oko dvadeset minuta. U uredu odmah počinjem raditi, uvijek me nešto čeka na radnom stolu. U devet i petnaest idem na doručak. Kupujem sendviče i pijem kavu. Radim do tri. Ponekad idem u grad kupiti nešto ili možda rezervirati karte za kazalište ili kino. Ručam kod kuće ili s prijateljicama u restoranu.

zagrebački	<i>of Zagreb</i>
tipičan	<i>typical</i>
radni dan	<i>working day</i>
rano	<i>early</i>
istuširati se, istuširam se	<i>shower</i>
prije	<i>before</i>
put	<i>road, journey</i>
nešto	<i>something</i>
čekati, čekam	<i>wait</i>
kupovati, kupujem (imperfective; kupiti perfective)	<i>to buy</i>
možda	<i>perhaps</i>
rezervirati, rezerviram	<i>reserve</i>
karta	<i>ticket</i>
kino	<i>cinema</i>

True or false?

- Jasnina firma je u Zagrebu.
- Put na posao traje oko dvadeset minuta.
- Jasna radi do tri po podne.

Comprehension 2

Read the passage below and answer the following questions:

Poslije lijepe večere kod Rudolfa i njegove majke, Sandra razmišlja o svom i Markovom životu u Zagrebu. Sjeća se njihovog stana u Londonu. U tom stanu imaju dnevnu sobu sa zelenim tepihom i zavjesama iste boje. Stan nije

velik, ali ima kuhinju i spavaću sobu za goste. Koli u dugo su već u Zagrebu? Hotel nije loš, ali je teško stanovati u jednoj sobi. Kaže mužu, "Moram priznati, sviđa mi se Rudolfov stan. Možemo li mi tražiti stan u Zagrebu? Ne volim živjeti stalno u hotelu." Mark sluša ženu i kaže, "Moramo čekati. Ne znam koliko dugo ostajemo u Zagrebu."

razmišljati, razmišljam	<i>to consider, think about</i>
sjećati se, sjećam se (followed by gen.)	<i>remember</i>
zelen	<i>green</i>
tepih	<i>carpet</i>
zavjesa	<i>curtain</i>
iste boje	<i>of the same colour</i>
Koliko dugo su već u Zagrebu?	<i>How long have they been in Zagreb?</i>
loš	<i>bad</i>
teško je	<i>it is difficult</i>
kazati, kažem	<i>to say, tell</i>
priznati	<i>to confess, admit</i>
Sviđa mi se Rudolfov stan.	<i>I like Rudolf's flat.</i>
slušati, slušam	<i>to listen to</i>
Koliko dugo ostajemo u Zagrebu?	<i>For how long are we staying in Zagreb?</i>

- 1 Kakve su zavjese u Rudolfovoj dnevnoj sobi?
 - a Lijepe su.
 - b Zelene su.
 - c Loše su.
- 2 Gdje Sandra ne može stanovati?
 - a Ne može stanovati u Zagrebu.
 - b Ne može stanovati u Londonu.
 - c Ne može stanovati u jednoj sobi.
- 3 Što misli Mark?
 - a Misli da je to dobra ideja.
 - b Ne zna koliko dugo ostaju u Zagrebu.
 - c Misli da hotel nije udoban.

09

svida mi se
plivanje
I like swimming

In this unit you will learn how to

- describe hobbies, sports and free time
- use other expressions of time, days of the week and months of the year

► Dialogue

Mark govori sa Rudolfom o sportovima i o slobodnom vremenu.

- Mark** Rudolf, bavite li se sportom?
Rudolf Da, bavim se sportom. Volim igrati tenis i nogomet. Sviđa mi se plivanje. Idem na bazen svakog ponedjeljka.
Mark I meni se sviđa plivanje. U Londonu idem dva-tri puta tjedno. Gdje je vaš bazen?
Rudolf Idem u Sportsko-rekreacijski centar. Zatvoren bazen radi svaki dan i zimi i ljeti. Imaju i otvoren bazen, radi od početka lipnja do kraja rujna.
Mark Što još ima tamo?
Rudolf Ima terena za sve sportove. Imaju stadion za hokej na travi i stadion za hokej na ledu. Ljudi igraju košarku. Imaju rukometno igralište, i terene za tenis i za nogomet. Stadioni za hokej rade svaki dan, rukometno igralište radi subotom i nedjeljom.
Mark Volim igrati badminton.
Rudolf Imaju teren za igranje badmintona. Radi srijedom od devet sati do podne, i subotom po podne.
Mark Da li se Jasna bavi sportom?
Rudolf Igra badminton. A bavi li se Sandra sportom?
Mark Sandri se sviđa plivanje.
Rudolf Morate doći u Centar.
Mark Kada idete?
Rudolf Da vidim... Danas je četvrtak. Idem prekosutra.
Mark Dobro. Ja sam u subotu slobodan.

sport	<i>sport</i>
slobodno vrijeme (o slobodnom vremenu... without '..ij..')	<i>free time (leisure)</i>
baviti se, bavim se (followed by instrumental case)	<i>to be occupied with, take part in</i>
do kraja rujna	<i>to the end of September</i>
teren	<i>pitch, court (for sports)</i>
za sve sportove	<i>for all sports</i>
stadion za hokej na travi	<i>stadium for grass hockey</i>
hokej na ledu	<i>ice hockey</i>
igrati, igram	<i>to play</i>
tenis	<i>tennis</i>

nogomet	<i>football</i>
bazen	<i>swimming pool</i>
svakog ponedjeljka	<i>every Monday</i>
dva-tri puta	<i>two or three times</i>
tjedno	<i>weekly</i>
Sportsko-rekreacijski centar	<i>sports centre</i>
zatvoren bazen	<i>covered pool</i>
zimi	<i>in winter</i>
ljeti	<i>in summer</i>
otvoren bazen	<i>open-air pool</i>
od početka lipnja	<i>from the beginning of June</i>
košarka	<i>basketball</i>
rukometno igralište	<i>handball pitch</i>
rukomet	<i>handball</i>
teren za tenis	<i>tennis court</i>
svaki dan	<i>every day</i>
subotom	<i>on Saturdays</i>
nedjeljom	<i>on Sundays</i>
igranje	<i>playing</i>
srijedom	<i>on Wednesdays</i>
Sandri se sviđa plivanje.	<i>Sandra likes swimming.</i>
Da vidim...	<i>Let me see...</i>
četvrtak	<i>Thursday</i>
Ja sam slobodan.	<i>I am free (available).</i>
u subotu	<i>on Saturday</i>

Mark čita informacije o Sportsko-rekreacijskom centru:

ZATVORENI BAZENI (olimpijski i mali)

Radno vrijeme: radnim danom od **12.00** do **19.00** sati, subotom od **10.00** do **20.00** sati. Nedjeljom ne radi.

RUKOMETNO IGRALIŠTE

Radno vrijeme: svake subote i nedelje od travnja do listopada.

ATLETSKI STADION

Tečaj atletike traje 15 sati (3 tjedna x 5 dana) od **15.30** do **16.30** sati

čitati, čitam	<i>to read</i>
informacija (usually used in plural informacije)	<i>information</i>
radnim danom	<i>on working days</i>
Nedjeljom ne radi.	<i>It does not work on Sundays (i.e. it is not open).</i>
svake subote	<i>every Saturday</i>
od travnja do listopada	<i>from April to October</i>
atletski stadion	<i>athletics stadium, track</i>
tečaj	<i>course</i>

True or false?

- Rudolf se bavi tenisom, nogometom i plivanjem.
- Mark voli igrati košarku.
- Zatvoreni bazeni rade svaki dan.

i Sport and recreation

Zagreb, as the main city of Croatia, has many sporting facilities. Many of them are modern, having been built to accommodate the World Student Games which were held there in 1987. There are opportunities for winter sports too such as skating (**klizanje**), and just outside the city there is a popular spot for skiing (**skijanje**).

▶ Key phrases

How to:

- use more expressions of time –

every day
every Monday
every Saturday

on Saturdays
on Sundays
on Wednesdays

weekly

today is...

on Saturday

in winter
in summer

svaki dan
svakog ponedjeljka
svake subote

subotom
nedjeljom
srijedom

tjedno

danas je...

u subotu

zimi
ljeti

*from the beginning of June
to the end of September
from April to October*

- express involvement with sport.
- say that you play a sport.
- say that you like a sport.
or

od početka lipnja
do kraja rujna
od travnja do listopada

bavim se sportom

igram tenis

volim tenis

sviđa mi se plivanje

How it works

Sviđa mi se plivanje

You have already met the phrase **volim...** to express that you like something. There is another common expression used: **sviđa mi se...** This expression literally means *It is pleasing to me* and is formed by using the dative case of the relevant person (i.e. *me*).

Sviđa mi se plivanje.

Sviđa joj se Zagreb.

Marku se sviđa plivanje.

Sandri se sviđa Zagreb.

I like swimming.

She likes Zagreb.

Mark likes swimming.

Sandra likes Zagreb.

The verbal part **sviđa** is an **-a** verb like **gledati**. Look what happens when more than one thing is liked, **sviđa** is transformed into a plural form **sviđaju**:

Sviđaju mi se te knjige.

I like those books.

Reflexive verbs

In this unit you have met more verbs which are called reflexive verbs. These verbs include **se** when used: (**baviti se**, **sjećati se**, etc.). The short word **se** never changes.

Se is roughly equivalent to the English *oneself*, although it is not always immediately apparent in English that this word has to be used with the verb.

These verbs are never followed by the accusative case:

Bavim se sportom.

(instrumental – **sportom**)

Sjećam se stana u Londonu.

(genitive – **stana**)

I am engaged in sport.

(I involve *myself* in sport.)

I remember the flat in

London.

Ženi se Njemicom. *He is getting married*
 (ženiti se – *to be getting married*) *to a German.*
 (followed by the instrumental – Njemicom)

The word *se* is like the short forms of *biti* or of *ja*, *ti*, etc. It never comes as first word, but as second word in the sentence:

Kako se zovete?	<i>What is your name?</i> (Lit. <i>How do you call yourself?</i>)
Zovem se Mark.	<i>My name is Mark.</i> (<i>I call myself Mark.</i>)

Word order

The words like *se* which never come at the beginning of the sentence are called enclitics. There is a strict order for the enclitics when more than one occurs together. The order is *li*, dative enclitic, genitive enclitic, accusative enclitic, *se*. Study the examples below.

Sjećam ga se.	<i>I remember him.</i>
Dajem joj ga.	<i>I give it to her.</i>
Sviđa mi se plivanje.	<i>I like swimming.</i>
Da li vam se sviđa plivanje?	<i>Do you like swimming?</i>
Sviđaju li vam se nogomet i košarka?	<i>Do you like football and basketball?</i>

In other instances word order is fairly flexible in Croatian. The case endings mean that you cannot get the meaning wrong, whatever the order of words. Look at these examples which mean the same because *Sandra* is nominative case each time:

Sandra daje ženi novac.	}	<i>Sandra gives the money to the woman.</i>
Sandra daje novac ženi.		
Novac Sandra daje ženi.		

Days of the week

The days of the week are:

ponedjeljak	<i>Monday</i>	petak	<i>Friday</i>
utorak	<i>Tuesday</i>	subota	<i>Saturday</i>
srijeda	<i>Wednesday</i>	nedjelja	<i>Sunday</i>
četvrtak	<i>Thursday</i>		

Days are always spelt with a small letter in Croatian.

To say *every...* use the genitive case with the adjective **svaki** *every*:

svakog ponedjeljka	<i>every Monday</i>
svake subote	<i>every Saturday</i>

(Sometimes the accusative case is used with **dan**: **svaki dan**.)

To say *on Tuesdays*, etc. simply use the word in the instrumental case (singular):

utorkom	<i>on Tuesdays</i>
četvrtkom	<i>on Thursdays</i>

To say *on a day* use the preposition **u** followed by the name of the day in the accusative case

u utorak	<i>on Tuesday</i>
u subotu	<i>on Saturday</i>

The word for *week* is **tjedan** and for *weekly* is **tjedno**.

▶ Months of the year

The names of the months are as follows:

siječanj	<i>January</i>	srpanj	<i>July</i>
veljača	<i>February</i>	kolovoz	<i>August</i>
ožujak	<i>March</i>	rujan	<i>September</i>
travanj	<i>April</i>	listopad	<i>October</i>
svibanj	<i>May</i>	studeni	<i>November</i>
lipanj	<i>June</i>	prosinac	<i>December</i>

Months are always spelt with a small letter in Croatian. To say *in a month* use **u** followed by the name of the month in the dative case:

u siječnju	<i>in January</i>
u veljači	<i>in February</i>
u ožujku	<i>in March</i>

The word **studeni** is an adjective in form:

u studenom	<i>in November</i>
------------	--------------------

The word for *month* is **mjesec** and for *monthly* is **mjesečno**.

▶ Seasons of the year

The seasons of the year are:

proljeće	<i>spring</i>	u proljeće	<i>in spring</i>
ljet	<i>summer</i>	ljeti	<i>in summer</i>
jesen	<i>autumn</i>	u jesen	<i>in autumn</i>
zima	<i>winter</i>	zimi	<i>in winter</i>

Dva-tri puta

To say *two* or *three* in Croatian you join the two numbers together with a hyphen. Look at the following examples:

pet-šest ljudi	<i>five or six people</i>
sedam-osam terena za tenis	<i>seven or eight tennis courts</i>

Practice

- 1 Replace the verb **voljeti** with the corresponding phrase taken from **sviđati se** as in the example:

Examples: Mark voli nogomet. Marku se sviđa nogomet.

Take care to choose the correct person in the dative case and to choose the correct endings for both the verb (**sviđa** or **sviđaju**) and the thing which is liked.

- a Vole ove knjige.
- b Volim nogomet.
- c Da li volite plivanje?
- d Rudolf voli košarku.
- e Sandra i Jasna vole badminton.

- 2 Replace the noun or nouns in **bold** in the following sentences with the appropriate pronouns.

Example: Konobar daje **nož ženi**. Konobar joj ga daje.

Take care with choosing the correct case for each person and take care to position each short enclitic form correctly.

- a Čovjek daje **marke Marku**.
- b Da li žena daje **Sandri** novac?
- c Vidim **Rudolfa** blizu spomenika.
- d Ljudi piju **kavu** u kavani.
- e Mark gleda **ženu**.
- f Pišemo **mami**.

- g Dajem knjige ljudima.
h Sjeća se stana u Londonu.

▶ 3 Fill in the missing parts of the dialogue:

Do you like swimming?

Ne, ne sviđa mi se.

Do you involve yourself in a sport?

Da, bavim se rukometom.

I like to play handball too. Where is the handball court?

Ima rukometno igralište u Sportsko-rekreacijskom centru.

Do they have a covered swimming pool there?

Imaju. Zatvoren bazen radi svaki dan.

At what time does it work?

Radi od devet sati prije podne do dva sata po podne.

When are you going to the sports centre?

Idem u srijedu. Dođite u Centar u srijedu!

▶ 4 Supply the expression of time as indicated in English in brackets to complete the sentences below:

Example: Igram tenis. (*on Thursdays*) Četvrtkom.

- a Pijem kavu. (*every day*)
b Volim igrati badminton. (*every Saturday*)
c Idem u Zagreb. (*on Wednesday*)
d Ljudi idu na skijanje. (*in winter*)
e Otvoren bazen radi. (*from May to September*)
f Jedemo ribu. (*on Fridays*)
g Više vole igrati tenis. (*in spring*)
h Mark i Sandra idu u grad. (*on Sunday*)
i Jasna ide u London. (*in March*)
j Zvonko se ženi Marijom. (*on Saturday*)

Comprehension 1

Dva dana kasnije Sandra i Jasna idu na kavu.

Sandra Jasna, što radite kada niste na poslu?

Jasna Kod kuće gledam televiziju ili čitam.

Sandra Bavite li se sportom?

Jasna Bavim se sportom.

Sandra Kakav sport volite?

Jasna Volim igrati badminton i tenis.

Sandra Kada ih igrate?

Jasna Ovaj tjedan idem u sportski centar u subotu. Igram tenis subotom.

- Sandra** Kada igrate badminton?
Jasna Teren za badminton radi utorkom i nedjeljom po podne. Tamo idem nedjeljom.
Sandra A, imaju li tamo otvoren bazen?
Jasna Imaju. Otvoren bazen radi ljeti, od početka srpnja do kraja kolovoza.
Sandra Što radite zimi?
Jasna Zimi idem na skijanje.
Sandra Kamo idete na skijanje?
Jasna Idem na Sljeme. To nije daleko od Zagreba. Možete ići tamo autobusom iz centra grada.

ići na skijanje *to go skiing*

True or false?

- a Jasna igra košarku.
 b Ovaj tjedan Jasna ide u sportski centar u subotu.
 c Zimi Jasna ide na skijanje.

Comprehension 2

Read the passage on page 117 and answer the questions below.

- 1 Kada radi trim kabinet?
 - a Od deset sati ujutro do šest sati navečer.
 - b Od deset sati ujutro do osam sati navečer.
 - c Od jedanaest sati ujutro do pola devet navečer.
- 2 Kada radi Noćni klub?
 - a Od sedam sati navečer.
 - b Od devet sati navečer.
 - c Od jedanaest sati navečer.
- 3 Kada ne radi stolni tenis?
 - a Ponedjeljkom.
 - b Subotom.
 - c Nedjeljom.

Velimir i njegova žena su na odmoru. Oni su u hotelu na moru. Na recepciji su informacije o sadržajima hotela. Velimir ih čita.

VAŠ HOTEL

PRIZEMLJE

Zatvoren bazen radi svaki dan od 8.00 do 21.30 sati.

Uz bazen gosti imaju trim kabinet, salon za masažu i saunu.

Radno vrijeme: Trim kabinet od 10.00 do 20.00 sati

Salon za masažu od 11.00 do 18.00 sati

Sauna od 10.00 do 20.30 sati.

(salon za masažu **ne radi** subotom i nedjeljom)

(sauna **ne radi** nedjeljom)

PRVI KAT

Četvorostazna automatska kuglana radi svaki dan od 10.00 do 21.00 sati. Pored kuglane je Noćni klub vašeg hotela.

Radno vrijeme: od 21.00

ČETVRTI KAT

Stolni tenis radi od 12.00 do 23.00 sati svaki dan osim ponedjeljka.

Ljeti gosti imaju i druge mogućnosti za sport u okolini hotela.

Mini-golf.

Badminton i tenis igrališta.

Sportovi na vodi.

na odmoru	<i>on holiday</i>
na moru	<i>by the sea</i>
sadržaj	<i>facility, content</i>
prizemlje	<i>ground floor</i>
uz bazen	<i>along with the pool</i>
trim kabinet	<i>exercise room</i>
salon za masažu	<i>massage salon</i>
četvorostazna automatska kuglana	<i>four-lane automatic bowling alley</i>
pored	<i>next to</i>
(preposition followed by gen.)	
noćni klub	<i>night club</i>
stolni tenis	<i>table tennis</i>
osim ponedjeljka	<i>except Monday</i>
(osim preposition with gen.)	
druge mogućnosti	<i>other possibilities</i>
u okolini hotela	<i>in the vicinity of the hotel</i>
sportovi na vodi	<i>water sports</i>

10

na izletu

on an excursion

In this unit you will learn how to

- **use more phrases to express agreement and disagreement**
- **express further degrees of certainty**
- **express satisfaction**
- **talk about travelling, the weather and the countryside**

► Dialogue

Danas Sandra i Mark idu s prijateljima u planine. Putuju kolima. Jasna vozi kola.

Mark Kako je dobro biti izvan grada u prirodi! Kako su lijepe ove planine!

Rudolf U pravu ste. Planine su lijepe kad sunce sija.

Sandra Da, slažem se. Vidimo planine, šumu, rijeku i polja.

Rudolf Međutim, kad je loše vrijeme, kad pada kiša ili snijeg, nije lijepo biti na planinama.

Mark Ali, danas je dobro vrijeme. Ja sam zadovoljan ovim pogledom na planine.

Jasna Slažem se s vama. Pogled je zaista divan. Sada dolazimo u selo. Tko ima kartu?

Sandra Ja je imam. Ne mogu naći selo.

Rudolf Dajte mi kartu, mislim da znam gdje smo. Idemo prema Varaždinu.

Mark Gdje je Varaždin?

Rudolf Varaždin je grad u sjeverozapadnoj Hrvatskoj.

Mark Znači, mi smo na sjeveru Hrvatske.

Rudolf Idemo u tom pravcu, prema sjeveru. Ali, mislim da je već vrijeme da skrenemo na lijevo. Kako se zove ovo selo? Nije mi jasno gdje smo. Po mom mišljenju, autocesta je na lijevo. Mi smo na krivom putu.

Jasna Nemaš pravo, Rudolf. Ovo je pravi put.

Rudolf Nisam baš siguran.

Jasna Ja jesam sigurna.

Rudolf U pravu si. Slažem se s tobom. Nije daleko do autoceste. Je li to kavana pored ceste?

Jasna Da. Ja sam žedna.

Rudolf I ja sam žedan. Putujemo već dva sata. Možemo ovdje napraviti kratku pauzu.

planina *mountain*
putovati, putujem *to travel*
kola (neut. pl.) *car*

kolima *by car*
voziti, vozim *to drive*

Kako su lijepe ove planine! *How beautiful these mountains are!*

izvan (preposition with gen.) *outside*

priroda *nature, countryside*
U pravu ste. *You are right.*

sunce	<i>sun</i>
sijati, sija	<i>to shine</i>
šuma	<i>forest</i>
rijeka	<i>river</i>
polje	<i>field</i>
međutim	<i>however</i>
loše vrijeme	<i>bad weather</i>
pada kiša	<i>it rains, it is raining</i>
pada snijeg	<i>it snows, it is snowing</i>
dobro vrijeme	<i>good weather</i>
zadovoljan (with ins.)	<i>pleased with, satisfied with</i>
pogled na (with acc.)	<i>view of</i>
s vama	<i>with you</i>
zaista	<i>really</i>
divan	<i>wonderful</i>
selo	<i>village</i>
karta	<i>map</i>
naći, nađem	<i>to find</i>
u sjeverozapadnoj Hrvatskoj	<i>in north-west Croatia</i>
na sjeveru	<i>in the north</i>
u tom pravcu	<i>in that direction</i>
prema sjeveru	<i>toward the north</i>
Nije mi jasno.	<i>It is not clear to me.</i>
po mom mišljenju	<i>in my opinion</i>
autocesta	<i>motorway, trunk road</i>
na krivom putu	<i>on the wrong road</i>
Nemaš pravo.	<i>You are not right.</i>
pravi put	<i>right road</i>
Nisam baš siguran.	<i>I am not quite sure.</i>
U pravu si.	<i>You are right.</i>
s tobom	<i>with you</i>
napraviti kratku pauzu	<i>to make a short break</i>

True or false?

- a Lijepo je biti na planinama kada pada snijeg.
- b Sandra daje kartu Rudolfu.
- c Jasna je u pravu kada kaže da su na pravom putu.

i Excursions around Zagreb

There are many places to visit in and around Zagreb. To the north-west is the old town of Varaždin, once the capital of Croatia. It is fast becoming an industrial town but the centre still retains its old world

charm. The castle and the town hall both date from the sixteenth century.

To the south is the Plitvice National Park. This is one of the most beautiful spots in inland Croatia with numerous lakes connected by waterfalls surrounded by dense forests. Both places are within a couple of hours' drive from Zagreb. The coast is not really accessible on a one-day trip.

Motoring

Large numbers of tourists visit Croatia by car. It is easy, if somewhat expensive, to hire a car from any one of a number of international hire companies which operate there. If you are driving and you need petrol (**benzin**) stop at a **benzinska stanica**. The road network is good on the whole and connects all major places of interest. Tourists that go straight to the coast are missing out on the historic towns, relaxing spa sites and countryside of inland Croatia. Visitors to such places can usually find accommodation in hotels, motels and private rooms at moderate rates.

▶ Key phrases

How to:

- say that you agree with someone.

Slažem se s vama.	(to someone with whom you use vi)
Slažem se s tobom.	(to someone with whom you use ti)
- say that someone is *right*, or that someone is *wrong*.

U pravu si (ti).	Nemate pravo. (vi).
-------------------------	----------------------------
- say that you are sure of something.

Ja jesam siguran.	(male speaking, using the long form of biti for added emphasis)
Ja jesam sigurna.	(female speaking)
- say that you are not quite sure of something.

Nisam baš siguran.	(male speaking)
Nisam baš sigurna.	(female speaking)

- say that it is not clear to you.
- say that *in your opinion*...
- express satisfaction.

Nije mi jasno.
po mom mišljenju
Zadovoljan sam.
(male speaking)
Zadovoljna sam.
(female speaking)

- use expressions relating to the weather.

loše vrijeme
dobro vrijeme
sunce sija
pada kiša
pada snijeg

- use expressions relating to direction and position.

u sjeverozapadnoj Hrvatskoj
na sjeveru
prema sjeveru
u tom pravcu
na krivom putu
na pravom putu

How it works

S vama/*with you* (Personal pronouns in the instrumental case)

You already know that after *s* (*with*) you use the instrumental case. So in the sentence **Slažem se s vama** you are using the instrumental case of *vi*. The pattern of cases for all the personal pronouns is as follows with some revision notes below:

nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.	ins.
ja	me, mene	me, mene	mi, meni	mnom(e)
ti	te, tebe	te, tebe	ti, tebi	tobom
on	ga, njega	ga, njega	mu, njemu	njim(e)
ona	je, ju nju	je, nje	joj, njoj	njom(e)
mi	nas, nas	nas, nas	nam, nama	nama
vi	vas, vas	vas, vas	vam, vama	vama
oni	ih, njih	ih, njih	im, njima	njima

- The short form of the pronoun comes first.
- The forms for **ono** are the same as for **on**.
- The preferred short form of **ona** in the accusative is **je**.

- d** Sometimes an **e** is added to the end of the pronoun in the instrumental case.
- e** The extra letter is added when the pronoun is used without a preposition (e.g. **Idem s njim. Zadovoljan sam njome**).
- f** The short forms are unstressed.
- g** The forms which are spelt the same (e.g. **nas, nas**) are stressed when used as long forms.
- h** The cases for **one** and **ona** are the same as for **oni**.

Nije mi jasno and word order

This kind of expression is called an impersonal expression. The phrase **nije jasno** *it is not clear* is formed by taking the neuter nominative form of the adjective **jasan** and using the **je** form from the verb **biti**. You have already come across some examples:

Lako je.	<i>It is easy.</i>
Teško je.	<i>It is difficult.</i>
Jasno je.	<i>It is clear.</i>

The **je** comes in second place because it is a short form and so cannot come at the beginning. The negative **nije** is not a short form.

Nije lako.	<i>It is not easy.</i>
Nije teško.	<i>It is not difficult.</i>
Nije jasno.	<i>It is not clear.</i>

You can add to these expressions the dative case of the personal pronouns to mean *to me* or *for me*, etc. Take care with the order of the short forms as **je** must come after the dative:

Lako mi je.	<i>It is easy for me. (I find it easy.)</i>
Teško mu je.	<i>It is difficult for him. (He finds it difficult).</i>
Jasno im je.	<i>It is clear to them.</i>
Nije joj lako.	<i>It is not easy for her.</i>
Nije nam teško.	<i>It is not difficult for us.</i>

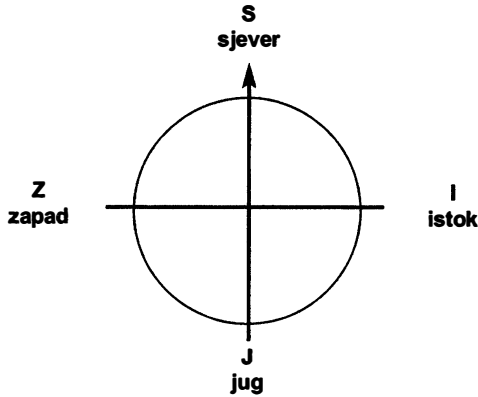
Study the word order in the following questions:

Je li ti jasno?	<i>Is it clear to you?</i>
Da li vam je jasno?	<i>Is it clear to you?</i>

Remember that **je** is an exception as far as short forms are concerned as it may occur at the beginning when introducing a question with the form **Je li...?**

Points of the compass

The basic points of the compass are:



To say *in the north*, etc. you use the preposition **na** (and dat.):

na sjeveru

in the north

na istoku

in the east

To say *towards the south*, etc. you use the preposition **prema** (and dat.):

prema jugu

towards the south

prema zapadu

towards the west

The adjectives *northern*, etc. are:

sjeverni

northern

istočni

eastern

južni

southern

zapadni

western

They only have the definite forms which end in **-i**. And you can make compounds like *northwestern*:

sjeverozapadni

northwestern

jugoistočni

southeastern

Idioms

a There are a number of ways of saying *you are right/wrong* (U **pravu** followed by short form of **biti**):

U pravu ste.	<i>You are right.</i>
U pravu je.	<i>S/He is right.</i>
U pravu su.	<i>They are right.</i>

(negative of **biti** followed by **u pravu**):

Niste u pravu.	<i>You are wrong.</i>
Nismo u pravu.	<i>We are wrong.</i>

(**Imati** followed by **pravo**):

Imaš pravo.	<i>You are right.</i>
-------------	-----------------------

(negative of **imati** followed by **pravo**):

Nemaju pravo.	<i>They are wrong.</i>
---------------	------------------------

There are also adjectives:

kriv <i>wrong</i>	prav <i>right</i>
--------------------------	--------------------------

Mi smo na pravom putu.	<i>We are on the right road.</i>
Ovo je krivi telefonski broj.	<i>This is the wrong telephone number.</i>

b The intensifying **baš** which may be added after many words to mean *quite* or *really*:

Nisam baš siguran.	<i>I am not quite sure.</i>
Baš sam zadovoljan.	<i>I am quite satisfied.</i>
Baš smo žedni.	<i>We are really thirsty.</i>

c To form the expression *in my opinion*, etc.:

The expression **po mom mišljenju** is formed from the preposition **po** followed by the dative case of **moj** and of the word **mišljenje** *opinion*.

The words **moj** and **tvoj** are often shortened:

moj + em = mom	tvoj + em = tvom
-------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

Study the following examples:

po njegovom mišljenju	<i>in his opinion</i>
po našem mišljenju	<i>in our opinion</i>

This expression is similar in meaning to

čini mi se	<i>it seems to me</i>
mislím da...	<i>I think that...</i>

Practice

1 Supply the correct cases of the personal pronoun indicated in the brackets:

- a Zadovoljni smo (oni).
- b Konobar (ona) daje jelovnik.
- c Idu s (mi) u kino.
- d Zadovoljna je (ja).
- e Da li (oni) gledate?
- f Nisu zadovoljni (on).
- g Gledaš li (ja).
- h Idem u kazalište s (vi).
- i Ne gledaju (ja).
- j Je li zadovoljan (ti)?

▶ 2 Form a question for the following answers:

- a Teško mi je.
- b Nije joj lako.
- c Nije im jasno.
- d Jasno mi je.

▶ 3 Answer the following questions affirmatively and then negatively:

- a Da li vam je teško?
- b Je li im jasno?
- c Je li mu jasno?
- d Je li ti lako?

4 Fit the correct question words taken from the box below to the following questions (you must use all the question words only once):

- a _____ se zovete?
- b _____ soba imaju u stanu?
- c _____ kompjutor imate?
- d _____ ide Rudolf sutra?
- e _____ ideš u grad?
- f _____ govori hrvatski?
- g _____ je Varaždin?
- h _____ Sandra želi kupiti?

Koliko Tko Što Kamo Kakav Kako Gdje Kada

5 Match the answers to the questions:

- | | | | |
|---|--------------------------|-----|--------------------|
| a | Je li Jasna u pravu? | i | Ne, nismo. |
| b | Da li ste u pravu? | ii | Ne, nisam u pravu. |
| c | Tko ima pravo? | iii | Da, u pravu je. |
| d | Jesmo li na pravom putu? | iv | Rudolf ima. |

6 Change the following sentences to include the phrase **po mišljenju**. Look at the examples and take care to use the adjective of the name of the person, or the correct form of **moj**, etc.:

Examples: Jasni se čini da pada kiša.

Po Jasinom mišljenju, pada kiša.

Mislimo da idemo prema Zagrebu.

Po našem mišljenju, idemo prema Zagrebu.

- | | |
|---|--|
| a | Rudolf misli da su Sandra i Mark u hotelu. |
| b | Čini joj se da je Rudolf na poslu. |
| c | Sutra idem, čini mi se, u kazalište. |
| d | Sandra i Mark misle da otvoren bazen radi svaki dan. |

Comprehension 1

Zagreb je glavni grad Hrvatske. Privredni je i kulturni centar s oko milijun stanovnika. U Zagrebu je park Maksimir sa zoološkim vrtom. Zoološki vrt otvoren je od devet sati do sumraka. U blizini parka Maksimir i Zoološkog vrta nalaze se sportski tereni: Stadion i kompleks "Dinamo" i Sportsko-rekreacijski centar.

Ako putujete prema sjeveru od Zagreba stižete do Slovenije. Ako putujete prema istoku stižete do Srbije. Ako putujete prema zapadu i prema jugozapadu stižete do Jadranskog mora. Ljeti tamo ima mnogo turista. Glavni gradovi na obali su Dubrovnik, Split, Zadar i Rijeka. Blizu obale su otoci – Hvar, Brač, Mljet, Korčula... Obala je divna, otoci su lijepi i more je plavo.

True or false?

- | | |
|---|---|
| a | U Zagrebu živi oko milijun stanovnika. |
| b | Dubrovnik je jedan od glavnih gradova na obali. |
| c | Mnogo turista dolazi na more. |

privredni	<i>economic</i>
kulturni	<i>cultural</i>
milijun	<i>million</i>
stanovnik	<i>inhabitant</i>
zoološki vrt	<i>zoo</i>
otvoren	<i>open</i>
sumrak	<i>dusk</i>
u blizini	<i>in the vicinity</i>
stizati, stižem	<i>to arrive</i>
Jadransko more	<i>Adriatic Sea</i>
obala	<i>coast</i>
blizu (preposition with gen.)	<i>near</i>
otok	<i>island</i>
plav	<i>blue</i>

Comprehension 2

Read the passage and answer the questions below.

When they stop during their excursion at the café, Mark asks Jasna about the weather on the coast. Sandra joins in their conversation.

- Mark** Jasna, kakvo je vrijeme na moru?
- Jasna** Toplo. Ljeti sunce sija skoro svaki dan. Volite li more?
- Mark** Da. Volim ga, i volim plivati u moru.
- Jasna** Sandra, slažete li se s Markom?
- Sandra** Da, slažem se s njim. Baš mi se sviđa ovdje u Zagrebu i u blizini Zagreba. Ali želimo također vidjeti obalu i Jadransko more.
- Jasna** Jadransko more je jako lijepo. Rudolf i ja idemo na odmor u kolovozu. Idemo na more. Hoćete li poći s nama?
- Sandra** Hvala na pozivu. To je dobra ideja. Idemo s vama.
- Jasna** Sandra, da prijedemo na ti. Idemo zajedno na more, sad smo prijatelji.
- Sandra** U pravu si, Jasna.

toplo	<i>warm</i>
skoro	<i>almost</i>
plivati	<i>to swim</i>
jako	<i>very</i>
ići na odmor	<i>to go on holiday</i>
poći	<i>to go, set off</i>

Hvala na pozivu. *Thanks for the invitation.*
dobra ideja *a good idea*
Da prijedemo na ti. *Let's start to use ti to one another.*

129

na izletu

10

Kakvo je vrijeme na obali?

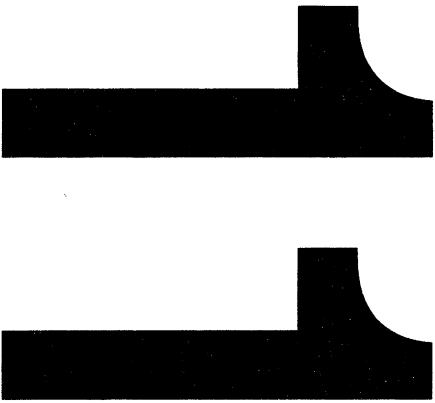
- a Loše.
- b Pada kiša.
- c Toplo je.

Što Sandra i Mark žele vidjeti?

- a More.
- b Planine.
- c Zagreb.

Kada idu Jasna i Rudolf na odmor?

- a Idu na more.
- b Idu u kolovožu.
- c Idu svaki mjesec.



povratne karte

return tickets

In this unit you will learn how to

- **express that things happened in the past (using the past tense form of the verb)**
- **talk more about travelling**
- **ask what happened**
- **ask how long ago something happened**

► Dialogue

Prijatelji su govorili o odmoru. Htjeli su ići na otok Hvar. Jasna je išla u putničku agenciju s Markom i Sandrom. Htjeli su kupiti avionske karte za Split. U Splitu će kupiti karte za brod.

- Jasna** Dobar dan. Molim vas, koliko koštaju avionske karte za Split?
Agent Da li hoćete povratne karte ili u jednom smjeru?
Jasna Povratne. Idemo sljedeći tjedan u petak, a vraćamo se dva tjedna kasnije.
Agent Jedna povratna karta košta osamsto kuna. Petkom ima dva aviona. Prvi ide prije podne u deset i petnaest sa zagrebačkog aerodroma. Drugi ide poslije podne u petnaest i trideset.
Jasna Koliko dugo traje put avionom od Zagreba do Splita?
Agent Četrdeset minuta.
Jasna Mislim da moramo rezervirati karte za prvi avion.
Sandra Imaš pravo, jer poslije dolaska u Split moramo stići na brod za otok. Molim vas, gospodine, želimo četiri povratne karte za prvi avion u petak sljedećeg tjedna. Vraćamo se natrag dva tjedna kasnije, u petak.
Agent Dobro...

131

povratne karte

11

The vocabulary layout changes here: we shall give imperfective and perfective forms of the infinitives of new verbs where appropriate (not every verb has two forms). We shall also give the **ja** forms when the present tense is not formed directly from the infinitive. Don't forget that in any pair of verbs the imperfective always comes first.

putnička agencija	<i>travel agency</i>
avionska karta	<i>air ticket</i>
U Splitu će kupiti...	<i>In Split they will buy...</i>
za (preposition with acc.)	<i>for</i>
brod	<i>boat</i>
povratna karta	<i>return ticket</i>
karta u jednom smjeru	<i>one-way ticket</i>
sljedeći tjedan	<i>next week</i>
vraćati se, vratiti se	<i>to return</i>
kasnije	<i>later</i>
osamsto	<i>800</i>
avion (avionom)	<i>aeroplane</i> (by air – instrumental)
aerodrom	<i>airport</i>
Koliko dugo traje put...?	<i>How long does the journey last...?</i>
od... do... (followed by gen.)	<i>from... to...</i>
jer	<i>since, for</i>
stizati, stići , (stížem, stignem: stizao, stigao/stigli)	<i>to arrive</i>
natrag	<i>back</i>

Čovjek je gledao u kompjutorski ekran i rezervirao njihove karte. Jasna je platila i izašli su iz agencije. Te večeri, išla je k Rudolfu.

- Rudolf** Što se desilo danas u agenciji? Je li sve bilo u redu?
Jasna Sve je bilo u redu. Nisam imala problema. Kupili smo karte.
Rudolf Onda, idemo u petak. Sjajno. Bili smo na Hvaru prije tri godine. Sjećaš li se?
Jasna Da, sjećam se. Ali smo tada išli u hotel. Možemo li iznajmiti privatne sobe u Hvaru?
Rudolf Možemo. Moramo odlučiti s Markom i Sandrom gdje želimo boraviti. Jedan kolega na poslu rekao mi je da je iznajmio privatnu sobu u Hvaru kod ljubazne gazdarice. Moram ga sutra pitati za njenu adresu.

kompjutorski ekran	<i>computer screen</i>
plaćati, platiti	<i>to pay</i>
te večeri	<i>that evening</i>
dešavati se, desiti se	<i>to happen</i>
Sve je bilo u redu.	<i>Everything was OK.</i>
problem	<i>problem</i>
onda	<i>then</i>
sjajno	<i>wonderful, smashing</i>
prije tri godine	<i>three years ago</i>
privatna soba	<i>private room</i>
iznajmljivati, iznajmiti	<i>to rent</i>
(iznajmljujem, iznajmim)	
odlučivati, odlučiti	<i>decide</i>
(odlučujem, odlučim)	
boraviti	<i>to stay</i>
kolega	<i>colleague, person at work (like tata this is a masculine word which has feminine endings, see Unit 7)</i>
reći (past tense rekao, rekli)	<i>to tell</i>
ljubazan	<i>kind</i>
gazdarica	<i>landlady</i>
adresa	<i>address</i>

(Verbs which end in **-ovati** and **-ivati** regularly form the present tense by changing to **-ujem, uješ**, etc: **putovati-putujem; iznajmljivati-iznajmljujem.**)

True or false?

- a Jasna je kupila avionske karte u putničkoj agenciji.
- b Put avionom od Zagreba do Splita traje trideset minuta.
- c Rudolf i Jasna su bili na Hvaru prije tri godine.

i Language

In the last few years Croatian has changed some words and adopted new ones. There is a tendency to avoid foreign forms of words when it is possible to make up a new one from Croatian roots, especially in official usage. Consequently, you will find the word **računalo** instead of **kompjutor** for *computer*. Also, for air travel you will find other words being used too: **zrakoplov** *aeroplane*, **zračna luka** *airport*, **zrakoplovna tvrtka** *aeroplane company*.

Travel

Many people find it more convenient to travel by air within the country. Rail or road transport can be slow because of the mountains. The flight from Zagreb to, say, Split or Dubrovnik on the coast does not take long. Once there you can take the airport bus into town and quickly get tickets for the boats which sail regularly to the islands.

Hvar

The town of Hvar is on the island of Hvar: when talking about the island you say **Idem na Hvar** or **Ja sam na Hvaru** using the preposition **na**. The preposition **na** is the one normally used when talking about islands in general. However, when talking about the town of Hvar you say **Idem u Hvar** or **Ja sam u Hvaru** using the preposition **u**. Generally speaking, the preposition **u** is used when talking about towns with one or two exceptions such as the town of **Rijeka** (**Idem na Rijeku**).

Privatna soba

There are basically two types of accommodation (**smještaj**) available to tourists on the coast. There are hotels used by all the large tour companies, and private rooms. Many people who live on the coast or on one of the Adriatic islands have converted their houses to take in paying guests during the summer. This is a relatively inexpensive form of accommodation. You can book such rooms at a travel agency on arrival at your destination. They are regularly checked to ensure that standards are maintained and you can book either a room (**soba**) or a small holiday flat (**apartman**).

▶ Key phrases

How to:

- use words for travelling on holiday.
- use words for tickets and reservations.
- use words for the journey.
- use words for staying.
- ask what happened and how long ago?

odmor
avion
brod
aerodrom

avionska karta za Split
povratna karta
karta u jednom smjeru
kupiti karte za brod
rezervirati kartu

Koliko dugo traje put?
Idemo u Split.
Vraćamo se iz Splita.

boraviti
hotel
privatna soba
gazdarica

Što se desilo?
Je li sve bilo u redu?

How it works

Past tense

Prijatelji su govorili o...
Htjeli su ići...
Jasna je išla...
Čovjek je gledao...
Sve je bilo u redu.
Nisam imala problema.
Kupili smo karte.

*The friends spoke about...
They wanted to go...
Jasna went...
The man looked at...
Everything was OK.
I did not have any problems.
We bought the tickets.*

The past tense is formed using two parts: one taken from the infinitive of the verb indicating something in the past and the other from **biti** to *be*.

a One part is formed using a part of the infinitive. There are three types of infinitive:

- Infinitives which end in a vowel before **-ti**; remove the **-ti** at the end:

govoriti
gledatigovori-
gleda-

Treat this part like an adjective which agrees with the subject of the verb:

masc. singular add **-o**
gledao, govorio

fem. singular add **-la**
gledala, govorila

neut. singular add **-lo**
gledalo, govorilo

masc. plural add **-li**
gledali, govorili

fem. plural add **-le**
gledale, govorile

neut. plural add **-la**
gledala, govorila

There is a small sub-group of verbs which end in **-jeti** in the infinitive which have an exception in the masculine singular (**vidjeti, željeti, živjeti, htjeti**):

masc. singular
vidio
želio
živio
htio

masc. plural
vidjeli
željeli
živjeli
htjeli

- Infinitives which end in **-sti**; remove the **-sti** then follow the same pattern as above:

jesti-

je-

masc. singular
jeo
fem. singular
jela
neut. singular
jelo

masc. plural
jeli
fem. plural
jele
neut. plural
jela

- Infinitives which end in **-ći**; learn the past tense forms separately:

moći
ići
reći

moga-
iša-
reka-

masc. singular
mogao, išao, rekao
 fem. singular
mogla, išla, rekla
 neut. singular
moglo, išlo, reklo

masc. plural
mogli, išli, rekli
 fem. plural
mogle, išle, rekle
 neut. plural
mogla, išla, rekla

The **-a-** which appears just before the adjective ending in the masculine singular disappears in the other forms in this category.

b Along with this part of the past tense taken from the infinitive use the relevant form of **biti**:

Morali su kupiti avionske karte.	<i>They had to buy air tickets.</i>
Čovjek je gledao u kompjutorski ekran.	<i>The man looked at the computer screen.</i>
Sve je bilo u redu.	<i>Everything was OK.</i>
Kupili smo karte.	<i>We bought the tickets.</i>

The part of **biti** you use depends on the subject of the verb. So, if the subject is **ja** you use **sam**, if it is **ti** you use **si**, etc. If Jasna wanted to say *I spoke...* she would use the form **ja sam govorila** (or **govorila sam** without **ja**), whereas Rudolf would say **ja sam govorio**.

Word order with the past tense

The rules for the order of enclitics (short forms) apply when forming the past tense in Croatian and care has to be taken. The short forms of **biti** cannot occur as the first word of the sentence or phrase. So you say:

On je gledao u kompjutorski ekran.	<i>or</i>	Gledao je u kompjutorski ekran.
Ja sam govorila o odmoru. (fem.)	<i>or</i>	Govorila sam o odmoru.
Mi smo bili na Hvaru.	<i>or</i>	Bili smo na Hvaru.

The word order, when using the short forms of the personal pronouns, follows a set pattern which you first met in Unit 9, e.g. **Rekao mi je** (*he told me*, using **mi** the dat. case of **ja**). The pattern is:

- i short form of **biti** (except **je**)
- ii dat. case
- iii gen. case

- iv acc. case
 v se (reflexive verbs only)
 vi je (short form from **biti**)

Look at the following examples:

Dala sam joj knjigu.	<i>I gave a book to her.</i>
Dala sam joj je.	<i>I gave it to her.</i>
Dali smo mu sok.	<i>We gave a fruit juice to him.</i>
Dali smo mu ga.	<i>We gave it to him.</i>
Dao mi je knjigu.	<i>He gave a book to me.</i>
Dao mi ju je.	<i>He gave it to me.</i>

(**ju** is used as the accusative case when the **je** form from **biti** is present)

Rekli su nam.	<i>They told us.</i>
Vratili smo se.	<i>We returned.</i>
Vratio se.	<i>He returned.</i>

(reflexive verbs usually omit **je** in the **on/ona/ono** forms of the past tense)

Negative past tense

To form the negative of the past tense in Croatian replace the short forms of **biti** with their negative equivalents. Note the effect this has on word order as the negative forms are not enclitics (short forms):

Rekao mi je.	<i>He told me.</i>
Nije mi rekao.	<i>He did not tell me.</i>
Dali smo mu ga.	<i>We gave it to him.</i>
Nismo mu ga dali.	<i>We did not give it to him.</i>
Vratio se.	<i>He returned.</i>
Nije se vratio.	<i>He did not return.</i>
Rekli su nam.	<i>They told us.</i>
Nisu nam rekli.	<i>They did not tell us.</i>
Dala sam joj je.	<i>I gave it to her.</i>
Nisam joj je dala.	<i>I did not give it to her.</i>

Asking a question in the past tense

You make questions in the past tense by following the patterns for asking questions with **biti**. There are two ways of forming a question.

a Using the short form:

Da li ste bili na Hvaru?
Da li smo rekli Rudolfu?

*Have you been on Hvar?
Did we tell Rudolf?*

b Using the long form:

Jeste li bili na Hvaru?
Jesmo li rekli Rudolfu?

*Have you been on Hvar?
Did we tell Rudolf? (or
Have we told Rudolf?)*

The normal rules for the order of short forms still apply:

Da li ste mu dali knjigu?
Jesu li vam rekli?

*Did you give a book to him?
Did they tell you?*

With je as an exception:

Je li vam dao kavu.

Did he give you a coffee?

Aspect with the past tense

The English language has a variety of forms in the past tense:

I did return.
I have returned.
I was returning.
I had returned. etc.

Croatian only has the one form, based on the infinitive and *biti*. However, it can express all the varieties of English because of aspects. As you have already seen Croatian has two aspects, an imperfective and a perfective. You have seen the differences between them in the infinitive and the imperative (command forms). They have similar differences in the past tense: the imperfective describes an incomplete or continuous action and the perfective describes a completed or momentary action. The first verb in the list below is the imperfective of the pair:

davati, dati	<i>to give</i>
vraćati se, vratiti se	<i>to return</i>
pisati, napisati	<i>to write</i>
piti, popiti	<i>to drink</i>
čitati, pročitati	<i>to read</i>
uzimati, uzeti	<i>to take</i>

Jučer je čitao knjigu, a njegov
brat je gledao televiziju. *Yesterday he was reading,
and his brother watched
television.*

(i.e. both actions occur at the same time and without indicating when they were concluded)

Pila je mlijeko svaki dan,
ali je danas popila sok.

*She drank (used to drink) milk
every day, but today she
drank fruit juice.*

(i.e. drinking milk was a daily occurrence, not limited to one completed occasion, but today she drank (up) a juice)

Jučer je pročitao knjigu.
(i.e. the action was completed)

He read the book yesterday.

Kad se vratio kući, napisao je
bratu pismo.

*When he returned home
he wrote a letter to
his brother.*

(i.e. both actions were completed one after the other)

Some verbs only have one form which is both imperfective and perfective. These are verbs taken from foreign languages (e.g. rezervirati, telefonirati) and a small group of others (e.g. ručati, vidjeti).

Using *vi* in the past tense

Vi can be used to refer either to one person or to many people. When it is used to refer to one person you must always use the masculine plural form:

Jasna, da li ste bili na Hvaru?

*Jasna, have you been
on Hvar?*

Rudolfe, jeste li rekli Jasni?

*Rudolf, have you
told Jasna?*

The same rule applies to using adjectives with *vi*:

Jasna, jeste li sigurni?

Jasna, are you sure?

Nisam imala problema

The *-a* ending on **problem** tells you that this word is being used in the genitive case meaning *I didn't have any problems*. The genitive case in Croatian can be used to indicate what in English would be expressed by *some* or *any*, as opposed to a single object. Compare the following sentences:

To nije moj problem.

That is not my problem.

Nisam imala problema.

I didn't have any problems.

Gdje je kruh?

Where is the bread?

Imate li kruha?

Have you got any bread?

Practice

- 1 Answer the following questions based on the Dialogue on pp. 131–2:
 - a Kamo je Jasna išla s Markom i Sandrom?
 - b Što su tamo htjeli kupiti?
 - c Da li su kupili povratne karte ili u jednom smjeru?
 - d U koliko sati ide prvi avion iz Zagreba?
 - e Koliko košta karta?
 - f Što moraju kupiti u Splitu?
 - g Kada se vraćaju?
 - h Kada je Jasna išla k Rudolfu?
 - i Kada su Jasna i Rudolf bili na Hvaru?
 - j Tko je uzeo privatnu sobu u Hvaru?

- 2 Formulate questions for the following answers:
 - a Pio sam mlijeko svaki dan.
 - b Napisao sam pismo.
 - c Rudolf mi je dao knjigu.
 - d Da, bio sam na Hvaru.
 - e Ne, nisam bila u Dubrovniku.
 - f Rezervirali su karte u putničkoj agenciji.
 - g Otišli su na odmor u subotu.
 - h Bili smo u Dubrovniku prije pet godina.
 - i Povratna karta za Split košta osamsto kuna.
 - j Ne, Rudolf nije radio u toj zgradi.

- 3 Choose the correct emboldened aspect in the sentence below:
 - a **Pisao**/Napisao sam mami svaki dan.
 - b Da li vam je konobar **davao**/dao kavu?
 - c Kad smo se vratili u Zagreb **uzimali**/uzeli smo taksi.
 - d Pijem mlijeko svaki dan, ali sam danas **pio**/**popio** čašu vode.

- 4 Make the following sentences negative (take care with the word order):
 - a Išli smo na Hvar prije tri godine.
 - b Konobar mi je dao salatu.
 - c Konobar mi ju je dao.
 - d Kupili su avionske karte u putničkoj agenciji.
 - e Kupili su ih u putničkoj agenciji.
 - f Vratila sam se jučer iz Dubrovnika.
 - g Čitao je novine.
 - h Čitao ih je.

5 Complete the missing parts of the dialogue:

Dobar dan.

Hello. I want to buy a plane ticket to Dubrovnik.

Da li hoćete povratnu kartu ili u jednom smjeru?

A one-way ticket, please. How much does it cost?

Karta u jednom smjeru za Dubrovnik košta petsto kuna.

At what time is there a plane on Mondays from Zagreb?

Ima tri aviona. Prvi ide prije podne u deset sati. Drugi ide poslije podne u petnaest sati i petnaest minuta. Treći ide navečer u dvadeset sati.

I want a ticket for Monday in the evening.

Mogu vam, ako želite, rezervirati hotel.

I have a private room in Dubrovnik.

Dobro. Izvolite kartu.

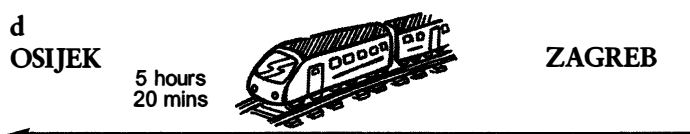
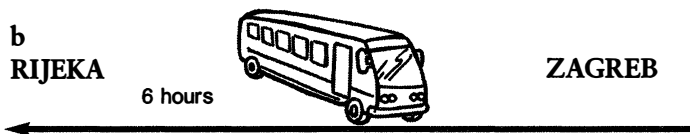
Thank you. Goodbye.

Molim. Do viđenja.

Izvolite kartu. Here is your ticket.

6 Make up sentences, based on the pictures below, as in the example:

- a Koliko dugo traje put avionom od Zagreba do Splita?
Četrdeset minuta.



► Comprehension 1

Zvonko je jučer išao na Glavni kolodvor. Tamo je htio kupiti voznu kartu.

- Zvonko** Molim vas, želim rezervirati kartu za Osijek.
Čovjek Da li hoćete kartu prvog ili drugog razreda?
Zvonko Prvog. Idem prekosutra.
Čovjek Prekosutra je nedjelja. Prvi vlak ide u osam i trideset ujutro.
Zvonko Kada ide drugi?
Čovjek Drugi ide u jedanaest sati. A onda vlakovi idu skoro svaki sat.
Zvonko Dajte mi, molim vas, jednu kartu za vlak u jedanaest sati.
Čovjek Da li hoćete povratnu kartu ili u jednom smjeru?
Zvonko Ne znam kada se vraćam.
Čovjek Nije važno, gospodine. Karta vam važi mjesec dana.
Zvonko Moram se vratiti do srijede. Mogu li rezervirati mjesto u Osijeku kad saznam točan datum povratka?
Čovjek Možete, gospodine. Idite na kolodvor u Osijeku dan prije povratka.
Zvonko Dajte mi, molim vas, jednu povratnu kartu za Osijek.

vozna karta	<i>train ticket</i>
karta prvog razreda	<i>first-class ticket</i>
karta drugog razreda	<i>second-class ticket</i>
vlak	<i>train (vlakovi – plural)</i>
skoro	<i>almost</i>
Karta vam važi mjesec dana.	<i>Your ticket is valid for a month.</i>
do srijede	<i>by Wednesday</i>
rezervirati mjesto	<i>to reserve a seat</i>
saзнати, saznam	<i>to get to know, find out</i>
kad saznam	<i>when I know (find out)</i>
točan datum povratka	<i>the exact date of return</i>
dan prije povratka	<i>the day before you come back (Lit. the day before return)</i>

True or false?

- Prvi vlak za Osijek ide u 10.00 ujutro.
- Zvonko ne zna kad se vraća iz Osijeka.
- Zvonko mora ići na kolodvor u Osijeku dva dana prije povratka.

Comprehension 2

143

povratne karte

11

Read the following passage and answer the questions below:

Rudolf je otišao na posao. Razgovarao je sa svojim kolegom o sobama u Hvaru. Rudolf je htio saznati sve o tim sobama. Pitao ga je koliko koštaju privatne sobe i kakve su. Njegov kolega mu je rekao da sobe nisu skupe. Dao mu je adresu jedne žene koja izdaje apartman. Apartman je na prvom katu s velikom kuhinjom, kupaonicom i dvije spavaće sobe. Ima pogled na more i na jednu staru crkvu. U blizini kuće nalazi se dobar riblji restoran. Blizu Hvara se nalaze mali otoci. Iz Hvara na te otoke svaki dan voze čamci. Tamo se možete sunčati i kupati. U Hvaru je sve lijepo.

koja izdaje	<i>who lets out, rents</i>
izdavati, izdajem	<i>to let, rent out</i>
crkva	<i>church</i>
čamac	<i>boat</i>
sunčati se	<i>to sunbathe</i>
kupati se	<i>to bathe</i>

- Što gazdarica izdaje?
 - Privatnu sobu.
 - Hotel.
 - Apartman.
- Kakav restoran je blizu njene kuće?
 - Riblji restoran.
 - Kavana.
 - Restoran s roštiljem.
- Što možete raditi na malim otocima?
 - Igrati nogomet.
 - Sjediti na obali.
 - Sunčati se.

12

imam telefonski broj

I have the telephone number

In this unit you will learn how to

- talk about future events
- ask questions about the future
- talk on the telephone
- report on events
- make indirect questions
- express *my/your* in other ways

► Dialogue

Prijatelji su rezervirali apartman kod gospođe Bilčić. Stigli su u Split avionom. Otišli su direktno u luku, gdje su kupili karte za brod. Sada stoje na pristaništu u Hvaru sa prtljagom.

Sandra Što ćemo raditi večeras? Nadam se da nećemo biti suviše umorni.

Jasna Tko će biti umoran? Ići ćemo u grad i naručiti ćemo lijepu večeru u nekom restoranu. Rudolf, znaš li put do gospođe Bilčić?

Rudolf Ne mogu naći njenu adresu. Mislio sam da mi je tu negdje u džepu. Bio sam siguran da ništa nisam zaboravio. Imam njen telefonski broj. Javit ću joj se. Idem na poštu. Čekajte me ovdje.

145

imam telefonski broj

12

luka	<i>harbour</i>
stajati, stojim	<i>to be standing</i>
pristanište	<i>quay</i>
prtljaga	<i>luggage</i>
nadati se, nadam se	<i>to hope</i>
suviše	<i>too much</i>
umoran	<i>tired</i>
neki	<i>some, a certain</i>
misлити, mislim	<i>to think</i>
...da mi je tu negdje u džepu	<i>...that it's here somewhere in my pocket</i>
ništa	<i>nothing</i>
zaboravljati, zaboraviti	<i>to forget</i>
Javit ću joj se.	<i>I'll call her.</i>
javljati se, javiti se	<i>to contact, be in touch</i>
čekati, čekam	<i>to wait</i>

Na pošti Rudolf razgovara s gospođom Bilčić preko telefona.

Bilčić Halo.

Rudolf Halo. Molim vas, možete li mi reći da li je gospođa Bilčić kod kuće?

Bilčić Na telefonu je. Tko govori?

Rudolf Ovdje Rudolf Šimunić, iz Zagreba. Rezervirao sam apartman kod vas. Rekao sam da ćemo stići danas.

Bilčić Oprostite, gospodine. Ne sjećam se. Jeste li mi pisali?

Rudolf Nisam. Telefonirao sam.

Bilčić Da, sada se sjećam. Ja sam vas pitala da li možete stići prekosutra.

- Rudolf** Da, a nismo mogli...
- Bilčić** Sve je u redu. Apartman je spreman. Gdje ste?
- Rudolf** Stigli smo u Hvar. Međutim, izgubio sam vašu adresu.
- Bilčić** Nema problema. Adresa mi je Dalmatinska ulica broj 5. Da li ste je zapisali?
- Rudolf** Jesam. Hvala vam lijepo. Doći ćemo odmah.
- Bilčić** Molim lijepo. Do viđenja.
- Rudolf** Do viđenja.

halo (on the telephone)	<i>hello</i>
na telefonu je	<i>speaking</i> (Lit. <i>she's on the telephone</i>)
telefonirati	<i>to telephone</i>
Pitala sam da li možete...	<i>I asked if you could...</i>
spreman	<i>ready, prepared</i>
međutim	<i>however</i>
gubiti, izgubiti	<i>to lose</i>
nema problema	<i>no problem</i>
Adresa mi je...	<i>My address is...</i>
zapisivati, zapisati (zapisujem, zapišem)	<i>to note down</i>
odmah	<i>immediately</i>

True or false?

- Rudolf traži adresu gospođe Bilčić.
- Rudolf je rezervirao apartman preko telefona.
- Gospođa Bilčić je rekla da apartman nije spreman.

i Preko telefona *over the telephone*

When making a telephone call, whoever picks up the phone at the other end may just say **halo** *hello*, a greeting largely reserved for use on the phone. Otherwise, the first word might be simply **Molim?** An alternative way for Rudolf to begin would have been **Ovdje Rudolf Šimunić. Molim vas, dajte mi gospođu Bilčić.** When you have asked for the person you wish to speak to, the response may be **Tko ga/je traži?** *Who wants him/her?*, or **na telefonu je** *he/she is on the telephone*.

When calling another town or country you'll need the **pozivni broj** *code number*, and when calling an office or a firm you may need to ask **Molim vas, dajte mi interni broj ...** (*Please give me extension number ...*).

The verbs to telephone are **telefonirati** (**telefoniram** **joj**: with dat.), **zvati** (**zovem** **je**: with acc.) and **javljati se**, **javiti se** (**javljam** **joj se**: with dat.). Don't forget that when making a call you may find that the line is engaged (**linija je zauzeta**) or that you have dialled the wrong number (**krivi broj**).

▶ Key phrases

How to:

- make telephone calls and to respond on the phone.

halo
Molim vas, dajte mi...
Tko ga/je traži?
Na telefonu je.
preko telefona

- use ways of expressing *my*, etc.
- say *somewhere*, *nothing*.

adresa mi je
negdje mi je u džepu
ništa nisam zaboravio

- report events and questions.
or

Rekao sam da ćemo stići...
Pitala sam da li možete stići...
Pitala sam možete li stići...

How it works

Future tense

When expressing the future you use the short form of **htjeti** (the same as the long form without the initial **ho-**). You have already met some of these forms in the Dialogues of Units 4 and 11:

ja	ću	mi	ćemo
ti	ćeš	vi	ćete
on/a/o	će	oni/e/a	će

This is used together with the infinitive of another verb:

Ja ću ići.

I shall go.

Rudolf će telefonirati.

Rudolf will telephone.

As this is a short form it may not come at the beginning of a sentence. If you omit the personal pronoun, the short form

Direct

'Stići ćemo danas,' rekao sam. *'We shall arrive today,' I said.*

In English, when you say *I said that...* or *I am telling you that...* we have a set of rules which determines the tense which follows. In Croatian the situation is simpler. You use the tense of the verb which was used or would have been used in the original statement. So:

Indirect

Rekao je da će doći. *He said that he would come.*

Direct

'Doći ću,' rekao je. *'I'll come,' he said.*

The same pattern is followed in all similar sentences in Croatian, for example:

Mislim da...	<i>I think that...</i>
Siguran sam da...	<i>I am sure that...</i>
Nadam se da...	<i>I hope that...</i>

Recreate what was originally said or thought and use the tense from that recreated sentence.

Indirect questions

Here is an example of an indirect question, compare it with the direct question:

Indirect

Možete li mi reći da li je gđa Bilčić kod kuće?	<i>Can you tell me if Mrs Bilčić is at home?</i>
--	--

Direct

Da li je (Je li) gđa Bilčić kod kuće?	<i>Is Mrs Bilčić at home?</i>
--	-------------------------------

In English, you use the word *if* in indirect questions. In Croatian, you begin the second part of the sentence with the question form *da li* (or *li* on its own after the verb as in an ordinary question) and use the tense of the verb from the original question:

Indirect

Pitala sam možete li stići prekosutra.	<i>I asked if you could arrive the day after tomorrow.</i>
---	--

Direct

Možete li stići prekosutra?	<i>Could you arrive the day after tomorrow?</i>
-----------------------------	---

Negdje, ništa

Look at the box below to see how these words are formed in Croatian:

gdje	<i>where</i>	tko	<i>who</i>
negdje	<i>somewhere</i>	netko	<i>someone</i>
nigdje	<i>nowhere</i>	nitko	<i>nobody</i>
igdje	<i>anywhere</i>	itko	<i>anyone</i>
što	<i>what</i>	kada	<i>when</i>
nešto	<i>something</i>	nekad	<i>once, formerly</i>
ništa	<i>nothing</i>	nikad	<i>never</i>
išta	<i>anything</i>	ikad	<i>anytime</i>

There are other forms for *anywhere*, etc. formed with either **bilo** or **god** in this pattern: *bilo gdje anywhere, gdje god anywhere, što god anything, bilo tko anyone*, etc.

Uzeo je nešto.

He took something.

Netko je došao.

Someone came.

If the verb or any other part of the sentence is negative you must use the negative word from the above list. This is sometimes heard in colloquial speech in English (e.g. *He didn't tell me nothing* rather than *He did not tell me anything* or *He told me nothing*):

Ništa nisam zaboravio.

I have forgotten nothing.

Nije bio nigdje.

He has not been anywhere.

Nikad nije uzeo ništa.

He has not taken anything ever.

Use of personal names and cases

People's names follow the normal rules for case endings where possible. Men's names follow the masculine and women's names the feminine pattern of endings. Foreign names also change if they fit the usual pattern, i.e. men's names ending in a consonant and women's names in *-a*. Surnames also change according to the normal patterns, but surnames which end in a consonant do not change when they are used for a woman. Study the following examples:

Ići ću s Rudolfom.

I shall go with Rudolf.

Dala je novac Marku.

She gave the money to Mark.

Gledaju Zvonka.

They are looking at Zvonko.

Vidio sam Sandru.

I saw Sandra.

Gledaju Rudolfa Šimunića. *They are looking at
Rudolf Šimunić.*
Gledaju Jasnu Kušan. *They are looking at
Jasna Kušan.*
Javio se gospođi Bilčić. *He called Mrs Bilčić.*

Tko će biti umoran?

After the word **tko** verbs and adjectives are always singular and take masculine endings:

Tko će biti umoran? *Who will be tired?*
Tko je došao? *Who has come?*

The same rule applies to **netko**:

Netko je došao. *Someone has come.*

More about possession

The dative case of **ja**, etc. may be used in order to show possession:

Adresa mi je... *My address is...*
(Lit. *the address to me is...*)

This is normally to express something close such as personal possessions or members of the family:

Sestra joj je u Londonu. *Her sister is in London.*
Roditelji su mi u Zagrebu. *My parents are in Zagreb.*

Moj, etc. and cases

The possessive adjectives **moj**, **tvoj**, **svoj** are unusual as they generally omit the **-je-** which you would expect in the middle of the word. Here is the full pattern of endings, along with the optional vowels which are sometimes added to all adjectives:

	Masc. sing.	Fem. sing.	Neut. sing.	Masc. plural	Fem. plural	Neut. plural
nom.	moj	moja	moje	moji	moje	moja
acc.	nom/gen	moju	moje	moje	moje	moja
gen.	mog(a)	moje	mog(a)	mojih	mojih	mojih
	mojeg (a)		mojeg(a)			
dat.	mom(e)	mojoj	mom(e)	mojim(a)	mojim(a)	mojim(a)
	mojem(u)		mojem(u)			
ins.	mojim	mojom	mojim	mojim(a)	mojim(a)	mojim(a)

The accusative of masculine adjectives is either the same as the nominative (for inanimate objects) or the same as the genitive (for people and animals).

All adjectives have the optional extra letters at the end, e.g. **dobrog(a)**, **starom(e)** and **starom(u)**. They are added when the adjective is used without a noun:

Jeste li vidjeli mladog čovjeka? *Did you see the young person?*
 Ne, vidio sam staroga. *No, I saw the old one.*

Practice

1 Put the following into the future tense:

- a Išli smo u dobar restoran.
- b Javio joj se.
- c Našli smo stolicu u blagovaonici.
- d Tko je stigao?
- e Što ste radili na odmoru?
- f Da li si mu dao ključ?
- g Nisu došli k nama.
- h Nisam bio na Hvaru.

2 Put the following into indirect speech, beginning with **Rekao/Rekla je da...** as in the example. Imagine that you have asked the receptionist in your hotel for information. You have to report the answer to your friend who is waiting by the door. Remember to take care with the order of short forms which have to come immediately after **da...**:

Example: Sigurno će vaše pismo stići sutra.

Rekao/Rekla je da će naše pismo sigurno stići sutra.

- a Možete kupiti novine tamo kod lifta.
- b Zaboravio sam vaše avionske karte.
- c Dobit ćete ih sutra.
- d Dat ću vam vaš novac sutra.
- e Prodajemo razglednice, koverta i marke u hotelu.
- f Ovo nije vaše pismo.
- g Danas će biti lijepo vrijeme.
- h Nismo izgubili ključ od vaše sobe.
- i Netko vas je tražio u hotelu.
- j Ne znam odakle je bio.

3 Make the following into an indirect question, beginning with **Pitao/Pitala sam da li...** You have asked the question

as below, and now you have to tell someone what you asked, as in the example (vi is here used to refer to one person politely):

Example: Hoćete li doći sutra na večeru?

Pitao/Pitala sam da li će doći sutra na večeru.

a Da li ste zaboravili gdje stanujemo?

b Da li će danas biti lijepo vrijeme?

c Je li gospođa Bilčić kod kuće?

d Znaš li gdje mi je ključ?

e Da li će Rudolf doći u London?

f Da li ste bili u Engleskoj?

g Da li si bila u Engleskoj?

h Mogu li dobiti čašu vode?

i Možete li doći sutra?

j Idemo li k tvom bratu sutra?

4 Pick the most appropriate form of **negdje**, **ništa**, etc. out of the box to fit these sentences. Only use each word once:

a _____ je došao.

b Mislio sam da _____ nisam zaboravio.

c Naša prtljaga mora biti _____ u našoj sobi.

d _____ nisam uzeo tvoju knjigu.

e Našao je _____ u svom džepu.

f Nije bio _____ u Engleskoj.

negdje

netko

nigdje

ništa

nikad

nešto

5 Match the questions to the answers below:

a Gdje je bio vaš novac?

i Nikad nisam bila.

b Jesi li bila u Engleskoj?

ii Vaš telefonski broj.

c Tko je došao?

iii Jasna.

d Što ste našli u džepu?

iv U mom džepu.

▶ 6 Fill in the missing part of the telephone conversation:

Molim?

Good day. Is Mr Šimunić at work?

Da, na poslu je. On je u svom uredu.

Put me through to his extension, please.

Halo. Rudolf Šimunić ovdje.

Hello. 'Your name' here.

Da, sjećam vas se.

I have forgotten your address. Could you tell me where you work?

Moja zgrada je u Ilici, broj dvanaest.

May I come by you today?

Naravno. Dođite u dva sata. Čekat ću vas.

Thank you. Goodbye.

Molim. Do viđenja.

Ilica is one of Zagreb's main streets

▶ Comprehension 1

Barry Smith je Englez. On je na odmoru u Hvaru. Ušao je u poštu i prišao šalteru.

Barry Dobar dan. Želim nazvati Englesku.

Službenik Kabina tri je slobodna. Uđite i okrenite broj.

Barry Molim vas, recite mi koji je pozivni broj za Englesku. Zaboravio sam ga.

Službenik Pozivni broj je nula nula četiri četiri.

Barry Hvala.

Službenik Molim.

Barry se javio mami da joj kaže da je stigao na otok i da je sve u redu. Izašao je iz kabine. Opet je prišao šalteru i platio račun.

ušao je (ući) *he went in*

prišao je *he went up to*

(prići – the verb is used without **je** as it is contained in the first part of the sentence **ušao je**)

šalter *counter*

nazvati *to call*

službenik *clerk*

slobodan *free*

okrenuti broj (okrenem) *to dial the number*

koji je pozivni broj... *which is the code number*

nula *zero*

izašao je (izaći) *he went out*

platiti *to pay*

račun *bill*

True or false?

- a Barry Smith je ušao u poštu.
- b Htio je nazvati sestru.
- c Platio je račun.

► Comprehension 2

Read the following passage and answer the questions below:

Barry Smith je učio hrvatski u Engleskoj. Kad je bio u Hvaru, našao je vrlo dobar riblji restoran. Nije znao sve riječi iz jelovnika. Konobarica je bila djevojka iz Zagreba, i govorila je engleski.

- Barry** Molim vas, što znači ova riječ 'dagnje' na engleskom?
Konobarica Na engleskom to znači 'mussels', gospodine.
Barry A kako se kaže 'zubatac' na engleskom?
Konobarica Ne znam. 'Zubatac' je jedna vrsta morske ribe. Da li znate, gospodine, kako se kaže na hrvatskom 'squid'?
Barry Naravno. To su 'lignje'.

vrlo	<i>very</i>
konobarica	<i>waitress</i>
djevojka	<i>girl, young lady (unmarried woman)</i>
Što znači ova riječ?	<i>What does this word mean?</i>
na engleskom	<i>in English</i>
Kako se kaže...?	<i>How is... said?/How do you say...?</i>
vrsta	<i>kind, sort</i>
morska riba	<i>salt water (Lit. sea) fish</i>
na hrvatskom	<i>in Croatian</i>

- 1 Što Barry uči u Engleskoj?
 - a Francuski.
 - b Hrvatski.
 - c Engleski.
- 2 Kako se kaže 'dagnje' na engleskom?
 - a Squid.
 - b Mussels.
 - c Sea fish.
- 3 Što je 'zubatac'?
 - a To je vrsta ribe.
 - b To su lignje.
 - c To je salata.

13

na pláži on the beach

In this unit you will learn how to

- **express dates, numbers above 100 and further expressions of time**
- **express feelings, intentions and moods**
- **say *oneself***

► Dialogue

Svi ljudi na odmoru u Hvaru vole *Paklene otoke*. Danas se Sandra i Jasna sunčaju na plaži jednog od tih otoka. Provede dan u razgovoru.

- Sandra** Jasna, koji je danas datum?
Jasna Danas je dvadeset prvi kolovoz.
Sandra Kad smo stigli u Hvar?
Jasna Stigli smo desetog kolovoza.
Sandra Ne ostaje nam mnogo vremena. Ponekad sanjam da ćemo ostati mjesecima na otoku.
Jasna Znam što hoćeš reći. Zaista je ovdje divno. Kad sam bila dijete, imala sam namjeru živjeti na nekom otoku, negdje daleko od mojih roditelja.
Sandra A što sad misliš?
Jasna Više nemam tu namjeru. Sad sam pesimist.
Sandra Kad si rođena?
Jasna Rođena sam tisuću devetsto sedamdeset pete godine.
Sandra Ne smiješ biti pesimist. Još si mlada. Što ti je! Jutros si bila dobro raspoložena. Lijepo si pjevala u apartmanu. Mislila sam da ćeš mi biti veselo društvo cijeli dan.

svi ljudi	<i>all people</i>
Pakleni otoci	<i>Hell's Islands</i>
plaža	<i>beach</i>
jedan od tih otoka	<i>one of those islands</i>
provoditi, provesti (provodim, provedem: provodio, proveo)	<i>to spend (of time)</i>
Koji je danas datum?	<i>What is the date today?</i>
Danas je dvadeset prvi kolovoz.	<i>Today is 21 August.</i>
desetog kolovoza	<i>on 10 August</i>
Ne ostaje nam...	<i>There does not remain for us...</i>
ostajati, ostati (ostajem, ostanem)	<i>to remain, stay</i>
mного vremena	<i>much time</i>
ponekad	<i>sometimes</i>
sanjati	<i>to dream</i>
mjesecima	<i>for months</i>
htjeti reći	<i>to want to say, to mean</i>
namjera	<i>intention</i>
sam (adj. sama, samo)	<i>alone</i>

(note this word is pronounced with a long falling tone and sounds completely different from the short form of **biti, ja sam**)

Nemam više tu namjeru.	<i>I no longer have that intention.</i>
rođen sam	<i>I was born</i>
tisuću devetsto sedamdeset	<i>in 1975</i>
pete godine	
pesimist	<i>pessimist</i>
Ne smiješ biti...	<i>You mustn't be...</i>
mlad	<i>young</i>
Što ti je!	<i>What's with you!, What's up!</i>
dobro raspoložen	<i>in a good mood</i>
pjevati	<i>to sing</i>
biti veselo društvo	<i>to be jolly company</i>
cijeli dan	<i>for the whole day</i>

Jasna Nemoj misliti da sam tužna. Sretna sam. Međutim, ne radujem se povratku u Zagreb.

Sandra Zašto?

Jasna Zato što ne znam koliko još dugo mogu podnositi Rudolfovo ponašanje. Ljutim se na njega. Njegova majka misli da sam ja kriva zato što nismo u braku. Ali, on se nije htio vjenčati. Pričali smo o toj mogućnosti u prošlosti. Ali kasnije više nije htio razgovarati o tome. Ovih dana me je pitao da li ja želim da se mi vjenčamo. Po mom mišljenju, još jednom moramo iskreno razgovarati o budućnosti. Bit će sve u redu čim počnemo govoriti o našim osjećajima.

Sandra Slažem se. Moraš misliti na sebe, a ne na njega.

Jasna Dobro mi je sada. Htjela sam ti ispričati što se dešava. Što ćemo raditi sad? Hoćeš li da se idemo kupati?

Sandra Da, kupa mi se.

tužan	<i>sad</i>
sretan	<i>happy</i>
radovati se, radujem se	<i>to look forward to</i>
(with dat.)	
Zašto?	<i>Why?</i>
zato što	<i>because</i>
Koliko još dugo...?	<i>For how much longer...?</i>
podnositi	<i>to tolerate</i>
ponašanje	<i>behaviour</i>
ljutiti se na (with acc.)	<i>to be angry with</i>
kriv	<i>wrong, guilty, at fault</i>
vjenčati se	<i>to get married</i>
pričati	<i>to tell, talk</i>
prošlost (fem. noun)	<i>the past</i>

Više nije htio da...	<i>He no longer wanted to...</i>
ovih dana	<i>these days, recently</i>
još jednom	<i>once more</i>
iskreno	<i>sincerely</i>
budućnost (fem. noun)	<i>the future</i>
čim	<i>as soon as</i>
počinjati, početi	<i>to begin</i>
(počinjem, počnem)	
osjećaj	<i>feeling, emotion</i>
misлити na sebe	<i>to think of/about oneself</i>
Dobro mi je.	<i>I'm OK, I feel fine.</i>
dešavati se, desiti se	<i>to happen</i>
kupati se	<i>to bathe</i>
Kupa mi se.	<i>I feel like going for a swim.</i>

True or false?

- a Jasna je imala namjeru živjeti daleko od kuće.
- b Jasna nije lijepo pjevala.
- c Rudolfova majka misli da je njen sin kriv zato što nije oženjen.

i Hvar

The island of Hvar is one of a group of larger islands including Brač and Korčula off the Adriatic coast between Split and Dubrovnik. Hvar is the furthest to reach from a port on the mainland, but the journey still takes only a couple of hours by ferry. The larger islands are surrounded by smaller ones, and the so-called **Pakleni otoci** (*Hell's Islands*) are only a few hundred yards from the entrance to Hvar's small fishing port. They have the best beaches on Hvar and there are always boats waiting to take you over.

▶ Key phrases

How to:

- ask the date today, and reply.

Koji je danas datum?
Danas je dvadeset prvi kolovoz.
- ask when something happened, and reply.

Kad...
Desetog kolovoza...
- state the year when someone was born.

Rođena (fem.) Rođen (masc.)
sam tisuću devetsto
sedamdeset pete godine.

- use further expressions of time.

mjesecima
mnogo vremena
cijeli dan
čim
u prošlosti
u budućnosti
ovih dana

- use expressions which show intentions.

Znam što hoćeš reći.
Imam namjeru...
Ne smiješ...
Kupa mi se.

- use expressions related to mood.

Što ti je!
tužna sam/tužan sam
sretna sam/sretan sam
ljutim se na njega/nju
radujem se povratku
dobro sam raspoložen/a
biti veselo društvo
on je kriv/ona je kriva
osjećaj
moraš misliti na sebe

- say *oneself*.

How it works

▶ Numbers – above 100

sto	100	sto devedeset jedan	191
dvjesta	200	dvjesta tri	203
trista	300	trista sedamdeset	370
četiristo	400	četiristo osamnaest	418
petsto	500	petsto šezdeset devet	569
šeststo	600	šeststo trideset dva	632
sedamsto	700	sedamsto dvadeset četiri	724
osamsto	800	osamsto osamdeset osam	888
devetsto	900	devetsto četrdeset pet	945
tisuća	1 000	tisuća sto jedan	1 101
milijun	1 000 000		
tri milijuna	petsto pet tisuća	šeststo pedeset tri	3 505 653

You might hear some Croatian speakers say **dvjesto** and **tristo**.

The word for *thousand* is often used in its accusative form **tisuću**.

► Dates

To express dates you use ordinal numbers (see Unit 6), remembering that only the last part of such a number becomes an adjective. To say *today is...* use the nominative case, and to say *on a date* use the genitive case:

Koji je datum danas?	<i>What is the date today?</i>
Danas je treći siječanj.	<i>Today is 3 January.</i>
Danas je osamnaesti travanj.	<i>Today is 18 April.</i>
Danas je dvadeset osmi prosinac.	<i>Today is 28 December.</i>

Kad smo stigli?	<i>When did we arrive?</i>
Stigli smo...	<i>We arrived...</i>
trinaestog veljače.	<i>on 13 February.</i>
dvadeset prvog srpnja.	<i>on 21 July.</i>
tridesetog travnja.	<i>on 30 October.</i>

To express a year use the formula *one thousand nine hundred...*, and to say in a year use the ordinal numeral and the word for *year godina*, in the genitive case:

Kada ste rođeni?	<i>When were you born?</i>
Tisuću devetsto sedamdeset druge godine.	<i>In 1972.</i>
Tisuću devetsto pedeset sedme godine.	<i>In 1957.</i>
Tisuću devetsto osamdeset prve godine.	<i>In 1981.</i>

Expressions of time

Mjesecima for months is expressed by using the instrumental plural case of the word *mjesec*. Similar expressions can be formed for other periods of time:

Čekali smo te satima.	<i>We waited for you for hours.</i>
Tražili su ga danima.	<i>They searched for him for days.</i>
tjednima	<i>for weeks</i>
godinama	<i>for years</i>

Other expressions of time can be formed by using *still, yet, more*:

Nemam više tu namjeru.	<i>I no longer intend to (Lit. have the intention).</i>
Više nije htio da...	<i>He no longer wanted to...</i>

Dok sam još bio dijete...

Još nije došao.

Još jednom.

više – with negative

još (uvijek)

još – with negative

While I was still a child...

He has not come yet.

Once more.

no longer

still

yet

Adverbs

Adverbs are words which often end in *-ly* in English: *sincerely*, *beautifully*, etc. They are formed in one of two ways in Croatian:

a use the nominative neuter form of the adjective:

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
lijep	lijepa	lijepo
iskren	iskrena	iskreno
tužan	tužna	tužno
sretan	sretna	sretno

b use the nominative masculine form of adjectives which end in *-ski*:

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
prijateljski	prijateljska	prijateljsko

They are frequently used to add meanings to verbs (whereas adjectives add meanings to nouns).

Lijepo si pjevala.

Razgovarali smo iskreno.

Tužno su me gledali.

Govorila je sa mnom
prijateljski.

You sang beautifully.

We talked sincerely.

They looked at me sadly.

*She spoke with me in a
friendly fashion.*

Hoćeš li da se idemo kupati?

You know that the verbs *željeti* and *htjeti* are used in a similar way to the English *I want to...* A difference occurs when talking about what we want others to do. Compare the following:

Hoćeš li da se idemo kupati?

Ovih dana me je pitao želim
li ja da se mi vjenčamo.

*Do you want us to go for
a swim?*

*Recently he's been asking if
I want us to get married.*

(emphasis added by use of pronouns **ja** and **mi** in Croatian)

In English we still use a construction with the infinitive, but in Croatian we say the equivalent of *I want that you do something*.

Kupa mi se

You don't have to say that *you want* all the time, you can add more of an inner feeling by saying *you feel like*. The equivalent expression in Croatian is formed by making the verb reflexive and using the dative case for the person concerned:

Kupa mi se.	<i>I feel like bathing.</i>
(kupa – on form of verb: mi – dat. of ja: se – reflexive enclitic)	
Jede mi se.	<i>I feel like eating.</i>
Ide mi se u kino.	<i>I feel like going to the cinema.</i>
Pije mi se čaj.	<i>I feel like (a drink of) tea.</i>

To say oneself

In English there are a number of words like *myself*, *yourself* and *oneself*, etc. In Croatian there is just one word which has all these meanings. It changes according to case in the following pattern:

nom. acc. gen.	sebe
dat.	sebi
ins.	sobom

The meaning of the word depends on the context of the sentence:

Misli na sebe.	<i>Think about yourself.</i>
Pogledaj sebe.	<i>Look at yourself.</i>
Zadovoljan je sobom.	<i>He is pleased with himself.</i>
Kupio je sebi novine.	<i>He bought a newspaper for himself.</i>

Aspects with početi

After the verb **počinjati**, **početi** (and others which mean *to begin* or ones which mean *to finish*) you must use an imperfective infinitive:

On počinje čitati.
Počeo sam piti mlijeko.

*He is beginning to read.
I began to drink my milk.*

Jedan od tih otoka

The phrase *one of...* is made up of **jedan** followed by **od** and the genitive case. Remember that **jedan** is an adjective and its ending will depend on what is being discussed:

jedan od tih otoka *one of those islands*

otok (masc.), jedan (masc.)

jedna od tih kavana *one of those cafés*

kavana (fem.), jedna (fem.)

u jednoj od tih kavana *in one of those cafés*

(use the feminine dative as you are saying the equivalent of)

u jednoj kavani od tih *in one café out of those*

Unusual categories of nouns (*vrijeme*)

Vrijeme is unusual in that it adds **-en-** before its neuter case endings:

	Singular	Plural
nom.	vrijeme	vremena
acc.	vrijeme	vremena
gen.	vremena	vremena
dat.	vremenu	vremenima
ins.	vremenom	vremenima

It also loses **-ij-** when it adds case endings.

A small group of nouns follows the same pattern as *vrijeme* and adds **-en-** before the case endings: e.g. *ime* (*name*), *breme* (*burden*). They are all neuter nouns which end in **-me**.

Unusual categories of adjectives

In this unit some adjectives do not strictly follow the patterns which you have learnt so far.

Svi	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
nom.	sav	sva	sve	svi	sve	sva
acc.	nom/gen	svu	sve	sve	sve	sva
gen.	sv e (a)	sve	sv e (a)		svih	
dat.	svem(u)	svoj	svem(u)		svim(a)	
ins.	svim	svom	svim		svim(a)	

The adjective is treated as if it has a soft ending, and -e is used in place of -o in masculine and neuter singular endings.

Remember that *svi* (masc. plural) also means *everyone* and *sve* (neut. singular) also means *everything*.

Svi su došli.

Everyone came.

Sve je bilo na stolu.

Everything was on the table.


Veselo			
Singular	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
nom.	veseo	vesela	veselo

The masculine nominative ends in -o, while all other endings are added to *vesel-*.

A similar adjective to *veseo* is *topao* *warm*

Topao			
Singular	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
nom.	topao	topla	toplo

Practice

-  1 Write out and say the following numbers in words: 567, 239, 807, 301, 1500, 3790.

2 Write out and say the dates below. Take care with getting the right case to match the meaning of the sentence:

- | | | |
|---|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| a | Danas je | (14 March). |
| b | Danas je | (1 June). |
| c | U četvrtak bit će | (8 August). |
| d | Vratit ćemo se | (on 3 September). |
| e | Englezi su stigli u Dubrovnik | (on 25 June). |
| f | Idemo u Zagreb | (on 27 December). |
| g | Rođen sam | (in 1980). |
| h | Rođena je | (in 1962). |
| i | Rođen sam | (on 25 May) (in 1971). |
| j | Rođena je | (on 11 January) (in 1935). |

3 Fill in the most appropriate words from the list below to complete the time expressions in the following sentences. Use each word only once:

- a Radujem se povratku na Hvar u _____.
- b Živjeli su na Braču _____.
- c _____ nisu došli.
- d Ne ostaje nam mnogo _____.
- e To se dešavalo u _____.
- f Sunčaju se na plaži po _____ dan.
- g _____ dođe Rudolf, recite mu da sam se javio.

budućnosti	čim	prošlosti	još	vremena
	godinama	cijeli		

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of **htjeti**:

- a _____ li vi da idemo u Varaždin vlakom?
- b Pitao me je, _____ li ja da dođe na večeru!
- c Rudolf mi je rekao da Mark _____ ostati cijeli dan na plaži.
- d Sandra je _____ da joj Jasna priča o svemu.

5 In the sentences below make an adverb from the adjective given in brackets. All the adjectives are given in the nominative masculine form:


- a (Tužan) je išao prema trgu.
- b Bilo smo u kavani i (veseo) smo pjevali.
- c Mogu ti (iskren) reći da nikad nisam bio tamo.
- d Mi smo razgovarali vrlo (prijateljski) cijeli dan.

6 Match the questions to the answers:

- | | | | |
|---|------------------------|-----|--|
| a | Mogu li ti reći nešto? | i | Htio sam te vidjeti. |
| b | Ideš li na odmor? | ii | Dobro sam raspložena, hvala. |
| c | Zašto si došao? | iii | Ne moraš, ako ne želiš. |
| d | Kako si danas? | iv | Imala sam namjeru, a sada nisam sigurna. |

7 Replace the verbs **htjeti** and **željeti** with a phrase meaning *I feel like* in the following sentences:

- a Hoću piti čaj.
 b Hoćemo ići u grad danas.
 c Ona se želi kupati.
 d Hoću ići na plažu danas.

 8 Complete the missing parts of the dialogue below:

Što vam je?

I am sad.

Zašto?

Because I do not feel like going home.

Možete se vratiti sljedeće godine.

I intend to return.

Onda, nemojte se ljutiti na mene.

I am not angry with you. I am looking forward to my return.

Vidim da ste sada sretni.

9 Provide the correct form of **sebe** in the sentences below:

- a Jasna je pogledala _____.
 b Jesu li zadovoljni _____?
 c On misli samo na _____.
 d Kupili smo _____ avionske karte za Dubrovnik.

Comprehension 1

Sandra i Mark nisu imali mnogo vremena dan prije polaska na Hvar. Sandra je spakovala majice, šorceve, kupaće kostime, čarape, donje rublje, sandale i cipele za njih. Mark je uzeo ljetne hlače, laganu crvenu jaknu i košulje. Ima jednu zelenu košulju s kratkim rukavima. Nije uzeo svoje sivo odijelo. Sandra je uzela svoju žutu jaknu, suknju i crnu haljinu. Bili su sigurni da nisu ništa zaboravili. Ali nisu znali de će biti tako toplo. Morali su kupiti šešire i mlijeko za sunčanje u prodavaonici u Hvaru.

dan prije polaska	<i>the day before departure</i>
pakovati, spakovati (pakujem, spakujem)	<i>to pack</i>
majica	<i>T-shirt</i>
šorc	<i>shorts</i>
kupaći kostim	<i>swimming costume</i>
čarapa	<i>sock</i>
donje rublje	<i>underwear</i>
sandale (fem. plural noun)	<i>sandals</i>
cipele (fem. plural noun)	<i>shoes</i>
ljetne hlače (fem. plural noun)	<i>summer trousers</i>
lagan	<i>light</i>
crven	<i>red</i>
jakna	<i>jacket</i>
košulja	<i>shirt</i>
zelen	<i>green</i>
s kratkim rukavima	<i>with short sleeves</i>
sivo odijelo	<i>grey suit</i>
žut	<i>yellow</i>
suknja	<i>skirt</i>
haljina	<i>dress</i>
tako	<i>so</i>
šešir	<i>hat</i>
mlijeko za sunčanje (or ulje za sunčanje)	<i>sun-tan lotion</i>

True or false?

- Sandra je spakovala cipele za njih.
- Mark ima jednu crvenu košulju s kratkim rukavima.
- Kupili su mlijeko za sunčanje u Zagrebu.

Comprehension 2

Here are some descriptions of resorts and hotels. Read the descriptions and then answer the questions on p. 170.

Pag je turistički grad. Smješten je u tihom zaljevu, u blagoj mediteranskoj klimi s mnogim sunčanim dana, kristalnim morem s malim i velikim plažama.

Hotel Bellevue (B kategorija) kapacitet: 320 kreveta. Svaka soba ima tuš, WC. Svaki balkon ima pogled na more. Hotel ima vlastitu plažu, rekreacioni centar i frizerski salon.

Turističko naselje Medena smješteno je u Segetu, malom ribarskom mjestu (4km od Trogira, 30km od Splita i 7km od aerodroma). Naselje ima restoran, grill-bar s terasom, terasu za ples, salu za konferenciju, frizerske salone, supermarket, bazen s toplom morskom vodom, terene za sport i dječje igralište.

Hotel Kompas: Cjenovnik po osobi/danu

	noćenje/doručak	polupansion	puni pansion
jednokrevetna soba	921 Kn	1012 Kn	1102 Kn
dvokrevetna soba	795 Kn	858 Kn	921 Kn
trokrevetna soba	740 Kn	800 Kn	841 Kn

turistički	<i>tourist (adj.)</i>
Smješten je...	<i>It is situated...</i>
u tihom zaljevu	<i>in a quiet bay</i>
u blagoj mediteranskoj klimi	<i>in a gentle Mediterranean climate</i>
sunčan dan	<i>sunny day</i>
krevet	<i>bed</i>
svaki	<i>each, every</i>
tuš	<i>shower</i>
WC	<i>toilet (pron. ve-tse)</i>
balkon	<i>balcony</i>
vlastit	<i>own</i>
frizerski salon	<i>hairdressing salon</i>
ribarski	<i>fishing (adj.)</i>
terasa	<i>terrace</i>
ples	<i>dance, dancing</i>
sala za konferenciju	<i>conference hall</i>
morska voda	<i>salt water</i>
dječje igralište	<i>children's playground</i>
cjenovnik po osobi/danu	<i>price list per person/day</i>
noćenje/doručak	<i>overnight/breakfast</i>
polupansion	<i>half board</i>
puni pansion	<i>full board</i>
jednokrevetna soba	<i>one-bedded room</i>
dvokrevetna soba	<i>two-bedded room</i>
trokrevetna soba	<i>three-bedded room</i>

- 1 Kakav grad je Pag?
 - a Ribarski.
 - b Industrijski.
 - c Turistički.

- 2 Gdje je smješteno turističko naselje 'Medena'?
 - a U malom mjestu.
 - b U gradu.
 - c Na plaži.

- 3 Koliko košta po osobi/danu dvokrevetna soba, polupansion, u Hotelu 'Kompas'?
 - a 1012 Kn
 - b 858 Kn
 - c 795 Kn

14

ako pada kiša...

if it rains...

In this unit you will learn how to

- say *if* using different levels of possibility and the conditional
- further understand aspects
- use expressions for the weather and verbs of movement
- say that you can *see/hear* somebody doing something

▶ Dialogue

Jasna je ustala rano. Odlučila je da ide u grad. Ostavila je poruku za Rudolfa.

Rudolf

Izašla sam po kruh za doručak. Kad ustaneš, stavi ručnike na balkon da se osuše. Da smo ih sinoć stavili na balkon, bili bi već suhi. Ako vidiš Sandru ili Marka, reci im da sam otišla u grad po kruh. Imam prijedlog za danas. Ako bude toplo, možemo ići na plažu. Ako bi padala kiša, mogli bismo ići u samostan.

Tvoja Jasna

ustajati, ustati	<i>to get up</i>
(ustajem, ustanem)	
rano	<i>early</i>
odlučiti	<i>to decide</i>
ostavljati, ostaviti	<i>to leave</i>
poruka	<i>message</i>
izlaziti izaći (izlazim, izađem: izlazio, izašao)	<i>to go out</i>
po kruh	<i>for bread</i>
stavi (stavljati, staviti)	<i>put (command form)</i>
ručnik	<i>towel</i>
sušiti se, osušiti se	<i>to dry</i>
Da smo...	<i>If we had...</i>
bili bi	<i>they would be</i>
suh	<i>dry</i>
reci im	<i>tell them (imperative of reći)</i>
odlaziti, otići (odlazim, odem: odlazio, otišao)	<i>to go away</i>
prijedlog	<i>suggestion</i>
Ako bude toplo...	<i>If it is warm...</i>
Ako bi padala kiša...	<i>If it were to rain...</i>
mogli bismo ići	<i>we could go</i>
samostan	<i>monastery</i>

Kad je Rudolf pročitao poruku, čuo je kako Jasna ulazi u apartman. Ušla je u njihovu sobu.

Jasna Zdravo, Rudolfe. Gdje su Sandra i Mark? Nema ih u sobi.

Rudolf Ne znam. Ja sam se upravo probudio.

Jasna Previše spavaš.

(*Gleda kroz prozor.*)

Evo ih. Vidim kako dolaze s obale. Možda su išli rivom u grad.

Rudolf Misliš li da će danas padati kiša? Vjetar ne puše, nebo je vedro i nema oblaka.

Jasna Sve je moguće. Vjerojatno neće padati. Ako bude toplo, nema problema. Kada bi bilo hladno, ne bismo išli na plažu. Moramo imati i drugi plan.

Rudolf U pravu si. Jesi li jutros vidjela gospođu Bilčić?

Jasna Koga?

Rudolf Našu gazdaricu. Hoću platiti račun.

Jasna Zašto?

Rudolf Zato što se vraćamo prekosutra. Da postoji mogućnost, ostali bismo još. Ali ne postoji, jer imam sastanak početkom sljedećeg tjedna u Zagrebu.

Čuo je kako Jasna ulazi.	<i>He heard Jasna coming in.</i>
ulaziti, ući (ulazim, uđem: ulazio, ušao)	<i>to enter, come in</i>
Nema ih u sobi.	<i>They're not in their room.</i>
upravo	<i>just now</i>
buditi se, probuditi se	<i>to wake up</i>
previše	<i>too much (also too...)</i>
spavati	<i>to sleep</i>
gledati kroz prozor (gledati, pogledati)	<i>to look through the window</i>
s obale	<i>from the coast</i>
možda	<i>perhaps</i>
riva (rivom)	<i>promenade, esplanade (along the promenade – instrumental)</i>
Vjetar ne puše.	<i>The wind is not blowing.</i>
Nebo je vedro.	<i>The sky is clear.</i>
oblak	<i>cloud</i>
mogući	<i>possible</i>
vjerojatno	<i>probably, likely</i>
Kada bi bilo hladno...	<i>If it were cold...</i>
drugi plan	<i>another plan</i>
koga	<i>whom</i>
račun	<i>bill, account</i>
postojati, postojim	<i>to exist</i>
mogućnost (fem. noun)	<i>possibility</i>
ostali bismo	<i>we would stay</i>
sastanak	<i>meeting</i>
početak	<i>beginning</i>

True or false?

- a Jasna je ustala kasno.
- b Sinoć nisu stavili ručnike na balkon.
- c Moraju se vratiti u Zagreb jer Rudolf ima sastanak.

i Jasna need not worry about the weather on Hvar. All the islands of the Adriatic have excellent weather, but Hvar is particularly known for having no rain all summer. It is said that hotels are even prepared to refund money for each day of rain. So, it is unlikely that she would need her **kišobran** *umbrella* or her **kaput** *coat*.

▶ Key phrases

How to:

- describe levels of possibility. možda
vjerojatno
moguće
- use types of sentences using *if*. Ako vidiš Sandru...
Ako bude toplo...
Ako 'bi padala kiša...
Kada bi bilo hladno...
Da smo ih stavili...
- use expressions about the weather. toplo je
hladno je
vjetar puše
nebo je vedro
nema oblaka
- say you can *see/hear* someone doing something. Čuo je kako Jasna ulazi u sobu.
Vidim kako dolaze s obale.
- use verbs of motion. Izašla je iz sobe.
Otišla je u grad.
Ušla je u sobu.

How it works

To say *if*

You need to know what is called the conditional part of the verb. This is formed by taking the past tense from the infinitive (*čitao*, *išli*, etc.) and combining it with the following short forms:

ja	bih	mi	bismo
ti	bi	vi	biste
on/a/o	bi	oni/e/a	bi

The conditional means *would* in English. It is often found in more formal and polite language, as a waiter might ask you in a restaurant **Što biste željeli, gospodine/gospođo?** (*What would you like, sir/madam?*) or as you first saw in Unit 2 in the phrase **ja bih kavu** *I would like coffee.*

These short forms, like others, tend not to come in first place in a sentence.

Like other short forms which are verbs they come before short forms from personal pronouns.

In conversation all forms of the verb are sometimes reduced to **bi**: **ja bi, vi bi**, etc.

The negative is formed by adding **ne** before the short form, which then allows it to come in first place:

Volio bih...	<i>I would like...</i>
Ne bih volio...	<i>I would not like...</i>

Questions are formed in one of two ways:

a Da li biste htjeli...? *Would you like...?*

(using the **da li** formula)

b Biste li htjeli...? *Would you like...?*

(using the **li** formula, but this time the short form comes first).

There are three levels of possibility expressed in Croatian *if* sentences:

- Ako je toplo, idemo na plažu. *If it is warm, we go to the beach.*

i.e. if A (it is warm) occurs, B (we go to the beach) occurs. Tenses are the same as in English. Note that when talking about one specific occasion in the future say **Ako bude toplo...** This is further explained below.

- Ako bi padala kiša, mogli bismo ići u samostan. *If it were to rain, we could go to the monastery.*

i.e. I don't believe A will occur, but it might. Conditional in both parts of the sentence. In such sentences **kada** may also be used to mean *if*.

- Da postoji mogućnost, ostali bismo.
Da smo ih sinoć stavili na balkon, bili bi suhi.

*If the possibility existed, we would stay.
If we had put them on the balcony last night, they would be dry.*

i.e. A is not possible or was not done, so the condition is not met for B which will not or did not occur. The verb with **da** is in the appropriate tense, and the second verb is in the conditional.

Other tenses in Croatian

You have learnt all the most-used parts of the verb in Croatian. There are four other tenses: pluperfect, aorist, imperfect, future exact. The first three are used rarely.

The pluperfect is formed by adding the past tense of **biti** to another verb in the past tense (e.g. **Bio sam napisao pismo bratu.** *I had written a letter to my brother.*)

The aorist and imperfect are also past tenses (e.g. **rekoh** *I said* – aorist; **Kako to bješe?** *How was that?* – imperfect).

The future exact is sometimes used with *if* clauses. It is formed in two parts by joining another part of the verb **biti** (given in the following pattern) –

ja	budem	mi	budemo
ti	budeš	vi	budete
on/a/o	bude	oni/e/a	budu

– with the past tense from the infinitive in the following way:

Ako bude padala kiša,
ići ćemo u kino.

*If it rains we shall go to
the cinema.*

It is used to indicate a precise point in the future, hence the formula **Ako bude toplo...**

i.e. if A will occur then B will happen. Both parts of the sentence are in future tenses, but it is not possible to use the future formed from the short form of **htjeti** with **ako**.

Verbal aspect

You have now met a number of aspectual pairs. If we take the imperfective (the first in any pair) as the basic verb, then we can see three main trends in forming the perfective:

a The perfective verb is a shortened version of the imperfective:

ustajati	ustati	<i>to get up</i>
počinjati	početi	<i>to begin</i>
ostavljati	ostaviti	<i>to leave</i>

b The perfective verb is formed by adding a prefix to the imperfective:

piti	popiti	<i>to drink</i>
čitati	pročitati	<i>to read</i>
pisati	napisati	<i>to write</i>

c The perfective verb belongs to a different type, often being an *i* verb:

sjećati se	sjetiti se	<i>to remember</i>
vraćati se	vratiti se	<i>to return</i>

Verbs of movement

The verb *to go* is *ići*. From this verb you can form a number of other verbs by adding prefixes which specify the direction of the movement. From *ići* you form the perfective form of the compound verb, and an imperfective is formed by adding the same prefix to *-laziti*:

izlaziti izaći (followed by preposition *iz* + gen.)

to go out

ulaziti ući (followed by preposition *u* + acc.)

to go in, enter

odlaziti otići (prepositions vary)

to go away, leave

Also:

dolaziti doći *to come, arrive*

izlaziti izići (same as izaći)

polaziti poći *to set off*

prelaziti prijeći *to cross*

prolaziti proći *to pass by*

silaziti sići *to go down, get off*

zalaziti zaći *to go behind*

They all follow the same verbal patterns. The **-laziti** forms are regular. The other forms end in **-đem**, etc. (except **otići**):

izaći	izađem
ući	uđem
otići	odem
prijeći	prijeđem

In the past tense they all follow the same pattern: on je izašao, ona je ušla, oni su otišli (like **išao** but note **prijeći** becomes **prešao**).

Examples:

Izašao je iz sobe.	<i>He came out of the room.</i>
Dolaze kući.	<i>They are coming home.</i>
Prešli su most.	<i>They crossed the bridge.</i>
Sunce je zašlo.	<i>The sun set.</i>

It is warm

When specifying that *I am warm* you add the relevant person in the dative case to the expression **toplo je** (which is the adverb form – Unit 13). This is the same principle as we had with the phrases **lako mi je** and **Je li vam jasno?**

Toplo mi je.	<i>I am warm.</i>
Je li vam hladno?	<i>Are you cold?</i>
Vruće im je.	<i>They are hot.</i>

Tko/koga

The words **tko** and **što** have case endings which resemble adjective endings:

nom.	tko	što
acc.	kog(a)	što
gen.	kog(a)	čeg(a)
dat.	kom(u/e)	čem(u)
ins.	kim(e)	čim(e)

The required case and ending are determined by the same rules as for all nouns and adjectives:

Koga si vidjela?	<i>Whom did you see?</i>
Kome je dao novac?	<i>To whom did he give the money?</i>

S kim su došli u grad?

Who did they come to town with? (or With whom...?)

Iz čega izlazimo?

What are we getting out of?

Čime ste zadovoljni?

What are you satisfied with?

Netko/nešto and nitko/ništa change according to these patterns too. Netko and nitko lose the t in other cases, e.g. nekog(a)/nikog(a).

When you use a preposition with nitko and ništa the word is split. Look at the following examples:

Jasna je sama.

Jasna is alone.

Nije došla ni s kim.

She came with nobody.

Nisam dobio pismo ni od koga. *I received a letter from nobody.*

Idiomatic phrases

- *to fetch*

Idem po kruh

I am going for the bread. (or I am going to fetch the bread.)

The normal way of saying *to fetch* is to say *ići po* followed by the accusative case.

- *To go along...*

Idu rivom u grad.

They are going along the promenade to town.

The place along which one moves is put into the instrumental case: *Išli su ulicom...* *They went down the street...*

- *They are not in...*

Nema ih u sobi.

They are not in their room.

You know *nema* followed by the genitive case to mean *there is not* or *there are not*. It is also commonly used to mean *they are out* (i.e. not at home).

Nema ga.

He is not in / not at home / not here.

- *At the beginning of...*

This is often expressed by the word **početkom** (instrumental case of **početak** *beginning*) followed by the genitive case:

Početak mjeseca.

At the beginning of the month.

The phrase **na početku** is also used.

The expression **na početku** and **na kraju** is used to mean *at the end*:

Krajem idućeg tjedna.

At the end of next month.

- *To see/hear someone doing something*

Čuo je kako Jasna ulazi u
apartman.

*He heard Jasna coming into
the apartment.*

Vidim kako dolaze s obale.

*I can see them coming from
the beach.*

In Croatian you express this by literally saying *he heard how Jasna comes into the apartment, I can see how they come*. The verb of perception is followed by **kako** and the other verb is in the present tense.

Gledali su kako ti ljudi
razgovaraju ispred hotela.

*They watched those people
talking in front of the hotel.*

Practice

- 1 Supply the word for *if* (ako, ako/kad, da) in each of the following sentences:

a _____ smo bili u Hvaru, bilo bi nam previše vruće.

b _____ dođeš k meni, vidjet ćeš ga.

c _____ si došao k meni, vidio bi ga.

d _____ pada kiša, išli bismo u kino.

e _____ bi padala kiša, išli bismo u kino.

f _____ imate moj novac, ostavite ga na stolu za mene.

g _____ je vidiš, reci joj da ću sutra biti kod kuće.

h _____ je znao kamo je otišla, rekao bi mi.

i _____ je vrijeme lijepo, išli bismo rivom.

j _____ biste htjeli ići u kazalište, dao bih vam moju kartu.

- 2 You are on holiday with a friend. Leave him/her a note and say the following:

I woke up early this morning.

I decided to go to the beach before breakfast.

If I return at 9 o'clock we can go to breakfast together.

If I do not return at nine, do not wait for me.

Go to breakfast. I shall buy something at the beach.

I shall see you at 10 o'clock in our room.

- 3 Complete the sentences below with the most appropriate verb of motion from the box. Each verb is given in its correct form.

- a Autobusi su _____ most.
 b Kamo _____?
 c Jasna je _____ iz sobe.
 d Ja ću _____, čim budem mogla.
 e Sunce _____ na Zapadu.
 f Mi _____ kuću gdje sam rođen.

zalazi izašla prolazimo idete doći prešli

Complete the sentences below with the most appropriate prepositions. Pay attention not only to the sense of the sentence but also to the case ending of the noun which comes after the preposition:

- a Neki ljudi vole gledati _____ prozor.
 b Satima smo stajali _____ trgu.
 c Rudolf, idite _____ kruh.
 d Ja sam _____ Engleske.
 e Sutra idemo _____ Korčulu.
 f Gosti su sjedjeli _____ stolom.
 g Dolazimo _____ obale.
 h Rudolf je _____ kuće.

Replace the words in brackets with their correct case forms:

- a (tko) pišete pismo?
 b (što) je Rudolf zadovoljan?
 c (nitko) nisam vidio.
 d (što) se sjećaš?
 e Nisam se sjećao (ništa).
 f Na (tko) se ljutiš?
 g (tko) je hladno?
 h Jesi li dao moj novac (netko)?

Match the questions to the answers:

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| a Da li vam je hladno? | i Ne znam, nema je kod kuće. |
| b Hoće li padati kiša danas? | ii Početkom rujna. |
| c Gdje je Jasna? | iii Nije, hvala. |
| d Kad idete kući? | iv Možda. |

Comprehension 1

These are weather forecasts covering different regions of Croatia:

VRIJEME

Danas: toplo

Središnja Hrvatska

Ujutro slab mraz i kratkotrajna magla. Danju sunčano sa slabim vjetrom. Jutarnja temperatura od -3 do 2 , a dnevna od 11 do 15C .

Slavonija i Baranja

Ujutro mraz i magla. Danju sunčano i toplo. Jutarnja temperatura od -2 do 5 , a dnevna od 12 do 16C .

Gorski kotar i Lika

Ujutro magla, a danju sunčano. Vjetar slab. Jutarnja temperatura od -3 do 2 , a dnevna od 10 do 15C .

Istra i Hrvatsko primorje

Ujutro u obalnom području sumaglica, a danju vedro ili malo oblačno. Vjetar slab. Jutarnja temperatura od 3 do 7 , a dnevna od 11 do 16C .

Dalmacija

Sunčano. Vjetar slab. Jutarnja temperatura od 3 do 10 , a dnevna od 12 to 16C .

slab	<i>weak, light</i>	obalan	<i>coastal</i>
mraz	<i>frost</i>	područje	<i>region</i>
kratkotrajn	<i>short-lived</i>	sumaglica	<i>mist</i>
magla	<i>fog</i>	oblačno	<i>cloudy</i>
jutarnji	<i>morning (adj.)</i>		

True or false?

- U Središnjoj Hrvatskoj vrijeme je danju sunčano.
- Nema sumaglice u Istri.
- Slab vjetar puše u Dalmaciji.

CROATIA



► Comprehension 2

Read or listen to the following passage and answer the questions below:

Margaret Turner je turistkinja iz Engleske. One je na odmoru u hotelu na Korčuli. Jednog dana, poslije doručka, nije mogla naći svoju tašku. Pitala je konobara da li je vidio njenu tašku. Rekao je da nije. Izašla je iz restorana i prišla recepciji.

- Margaret** Molim vas, gdje je policijska postaja?
Recepcija Zašto, gospođo? Što vam se desilo?
Margaret Netko mi je ukrao tašku.
Recepcija Što ste imali u taški?
Margaret Imala sam novčanik, putovnicu i putničke čekove.
Recepcija A koje je boje vaša taška?
Margaret Crvena.
Recepcija Netko ju je predao recepciji. Evo je. Ne trebate policajca. Mislim da ćete naći sve svoje stvari u njoj.

turist (masc.)	<i>tourist</i>
turistkinja (fem.)	
taška	<i>handbag</i>
u taški (k does not change to c here)	
policajska postaja	<i>police station</i>
krasti, ukrasti	<i>to steal</i>
(kradem, ukradem; krao, ukrao: followed by dat. meaning <i>from me</i>)	
novčanik	<i>wallet, purse</i>
putovnica	<i>passport</i>
putnički čekovi	<i>traveller's cheques</i>
A koje je boje...?	<i>And what colour is...?</i>
policajac	<i>policeman</i>

- Što je gospođa Turner izgubila?
 - Izgubila je tašku.
 - Izgubila je doručak.
 - Izgubila je ključ od sobe.
- Koga je gospođa Turner pitala?
 - Pitala je policajca.
 - Pitala je konobara.
 - Pitala je konobaricu.
- Gjde je našla svoju tašku?
 - U restoranu.
 - U policijskoj postaji.
 - Na recepciji.

15

**kako se
osjećate?**
how do you feel?

In this unit you will learn how to

- refer to health and parts of the body and call a doctor
- express degrees of forbidding
- form comparative and superlative adjectives such as *good, better, best*

▶ Dialogue

Jednog jutra Sandra i Mark su se probudili u svojoj hotelskoj sobi u Zagrebu. Vrijeme je postajalo hladnije i kiša je sve više padala. Mark se nije osjećao dobro.

Sandra Kako se osjećaš? Ne izgledaš dobro.

Mark To je istina. Uopće se ne osjećam dobro. Boli me glava. Nisam dobro spavao.

Sandra Zašto?

Mark Zato što nisam mogao spavati od kašlja.

Sandra Ništa nisam čula.

Mark Otišao sam u kupaonicu. Nisam se vratio dok nisam prestao kašljati. Nisam te htio probuditi.

Sandra Ne brini se. To nije ništa opasno. Samo si prehladen. To će proći.

Mark Lako je tebi govoriti. Ne smijem biti u krevetu. Znaš da uskoro s Rudolfom putujem u Osijek.

Sandra Ne trebaš kola za hitnu pomoć i ne moraš ići u bolnicu. Javit ću se recepciji. U hotelu moraju imati telefonski broj neke ambulante. Zamolit ću da liječnik dođe što prije.

hotelska soba	<i>hotel room</i>
postajati, postati (postajem, postanem)	<i>to become</i>
sve više	<i>all the more</i>
osjećati se, osjetiti se (dobro)	<i>to feel (well)</i>
izgledati (dobro)	<i>to look (well)</i>
istina	<i>truth</i>
uopće ne...	<i>not at all...</i>
boli me glava (boljeti)	<i>I have a headache.</i> <i>(Lit. the head hurts me).</i>
kašalj	<i>cough, coughing</i>
čuti (čujem)	<i>to hear</i>
dok ne...	<i>until...</i>
prestat (prestanem)	<i>to stop</i>
kašljati (kašljem)	<i>to cough</i>
brinuti se (brinem se)	<i>to worry</i>
opasan	<i>dangerous</i>
biti prehladen	<i>to have a cold</i>
To će proći.	<i>It will pass.</i>
Ne smijem.	<i>I must not.</i>
uskoro	<i>soon</i>
kola za hitnu pomoć	<i>ambulance</i>
Ne moraš...	<i>You do not have to...</i>
bolnica	<i>hospital</i>
ambulanta	<i>clinic</i>
liječnik	<i>doctor</i>
što prije	<i>as soon as possible</i>

Kasnije netko kuca na vrata. Sandra ih otvara.

Liječnik Dobar dan. Jeste li vi gospođa Bryant?

Sandra Jesam. Izvolite, uđite. Moj muž je bolestan.

Liječnik Dobar dan, gospodine. Kako se osjećate?

Mark Osjećam se vrlo loše, doktore. Mnogo kašljem, slab sam, a i grlo me počinje boljeti.

Liječnik Da vidim. Imate temperaturu. Molim vas, otvorite usta. Imate i infekciju. Ukratko, prehladjeni ste, gospodine. Nije ništa opasno. Vi mlađi ljudi brže ozdravljate nego stariji ljudi. Uskoro ćete se osjećati bolje.

Mark Najteže mi je ležati u krevetu. Moram se sutra vratiti na posao.

Liječnik (*Sandri*) Gospođo, neka vaš muž ostane u krevetu najmanje tri dana. Dat ću vam najjači lijek protiv te infekcije. Posao će ga čekati.

kasnije	<i>later</i>
kucati na vrata	<i>to knock at the door</i>
bolestan	<i>ill</i>
loš	<i>bad</i>
slab	<i>weak</i>
grlo	<i>throat</i>
da vidim...	<i>let me see...</i>
imati temperaturu	<i>to have a temperature</i>
usta (neut. plural)	<i>mouth</i>
infekcija	<i>infection</i>
ukratko	<i>in short, briefly</i>
mlađi	<i>younger</i>
brže	<i>quicker, more quickly</i>
ozdravljati, ozdraviti	<i>to recover, get better</i>
nego	<i>than</i>
stariji	<i>older</i>
bolje	<i>better</i>
najteže mi je	<i>most difficult for me is</i>
neka... ostane	<i>let (him)... stay</i>
najmanje	<i>least, at least</i>
najjači	<i>strongest</i>
lijek	<i>medicine</i>
protiv (with gen.)	<i>against</i>

True or false?

- Mark se nije osjećao dobro.
- Sandra je rekla da Mark mora ići u bolnicu.
- Liječnik je dao lijek protiv infekcije.

i Doctor

In the event of illness any large hotel will be able to provide quick and easy access to a doctor. You may need to visit a doctor's surgery (**ordinacija**), a clinic (**klinika**) or a hospital (**bolnica**). When talking about doctors the word **liječnik** is used, but when talking to them the word **doktor** is commonly used. You may need to find a dentist (**zubar**) too. Although, you will hopefully not need any of this information.

Parts of the body

When visiting a doctor you may need to point out where the problem is. It may concern your hair (**kosa**), face (**lice**), eye (**oko**), ear (**uho**), nose (**nos**), lip (**usna**), chin (**brada**), neck (**vrat**), shoulder (**rame**), arm or hand (**ruka**), finger (**prst**), stomach (**stomak**), back (**leđa**) (neut. plural word like **vrata**), leg or foot (**noga**) or knee (**koljeno**).

▶ Key phrases

How to:

- | | |
|---|---|
| • ask how people feel, say how you feel. | Kako se osjećate?
Osjećam se dobro.
Ne osjećam se dobro. |
| • remark on how people look. | Ne izgledate dobro.
Dobro izgledate. |
| • comment on someone's health. | Boli me glava.
Grlo me počinje boljeti.
Kašljati.
Moj muž je bolestan.
Ti si prehladen. |
| • understand comments from a doctor. | Imate temperaturu.
Imate infekciju.
Dat ću vam lijek protiv...
Uskoro ćete ozdraviti.
Uskoro ćete se bolje osjećati. |
| • express degrees of restriction. | ne možeš
ne moraš
ne smiješ |
| • use phrases connected with comparative forms. | što prije
sve više |

How it works

Comparative forms

There is one basic way to form the comparative of an adjective, i.e. the difference between *old* (*star*) and *older* (*stariji*). There are also three subcategories which are a variation on this basic form and some adjectives which do not follow this pattern at all. Most comparative adjectives end in soft consonants and take the appropriate adjective endings.

Basic Form

To form the comparative of an adjective add *-iji* to the adjective:

star	<i>old</i>	star + <i>iji</i>	stariji	<i>older</i>
slab	<i>weak</i>	slab + <i>iji</i>	slabiji	<i>weaker</i>
sretan	<i>happy</i>	sretan + <i>iji</i>	sretniji	<i>happier</i>
tužan	<i>sad</i>	tužan + <i>iji</i>	tužniji	<i>sadder</i>

Subcategories

i With these adjectives you add *-ji* to the adjective. However, in the process of doing this the final consonant at the end of the adjective changes (d-đ, g-ž, h-š, k-č, s-š, t-ć, z-ž):

mład	<i>young</i>	mład + <i>ji</i>	mładši	<i>younger</i>
blag	<i>gentle</i>	blag + <i>ji</i>	blaži	<i>gentler</i>
tih	<i>quiet</i>	tih + <i>ji</i>	tiši	<i>quieter</i>
jak	<i>strong</i>	jak + <i>ji</i>	jači	<i>stronger</i>
ljut	<i>angry</i>	ljut + <i>ji</i>	ljući	<i>angrier</i>

(*ljut* and *ljući* also mean *spicy hot* referring to food.)

ii With adjectives which end in *-ak*, *-ek* or *-ok* remove these letters and then proceed in a similar way for i above:

težak	<i>difficult</i>	tež + <i>ji</i>	teži	<i>more difficult</i>
dalek	<i>far</i>	dal + <i>ji</i>	dalji	<i>further</i>
visok	<i>tall</i>	vis + <i>ji</i>	viši	<i>taller</i>

iii Some adjectives which end with *-b*, *-p*, *-m*, *-v* add *-lji*:

skup	<i>expensive</i>	skuplji	<i>more expensive</i>
kriv	<i>wrong</i>	krivlji	<i>more wrong</i>

Irregular comparatives

dobar	<i>good</i>	bolji	<i>better</i>
loš	<i>bad</i>	gori	<i>worse</i>
mali	<i>small</i>	manji	<i>smaller</i>
lak	<i>easy</i>	lakši	<i>easier</i>
lijep	<i>beautiful</i>	ljepši	<i>more beautiful</i>
velik	<i>large</i>	veći	<i>larger</i>

Superlative form

To form the superlative (i.e. *best*, *tallest*, etc.) add **naj-** to the beginning of the comparative adjective:

najstariji	<i>oldest</i>
najmlađi	<i>youngest</i>
najteži	<i>most difficult (also heaviest)</i>
najskuplji	<i>most expensive</i>
najbolji	<i>best</i>

More and less

The words for *more* and *less* of something are followed by the genitive case:

više *more*

manje *less*

Rudolf je kupio mnogo knjiga, *Rudolf bought many books*,
ali je Mark kupio više. *but Mark bought more.*

These words can also be used to mean *more* or *less* with ordinary adjectives. In fact, **više** has to be used to form the comparative of adjectives which end in **-ski**:

više prijateljski *more friendly* **manje prijateljski** *less friendly*

Comparative of adverbs

The comparative and superlative form of adverbs is, as for ordinary adjectives, the neuter singular form:

Jasna lijepo pjeva,
ali Sandra pjeva još ljepše.

*Jasna sings beautifully, but
Sandra sings even more
beautifully.*

Similarly:

Meni je teško,
ali znam da je tebi teže.

*It is difficult for me,
but I know that it is more
difficult for you.*

To say *than*

There are two ways of saying *than*:

a Use **nego** with the same case endings before and after:

Njemu je teže nego tebi.

*It is more difficult for him
than for you.*

Moja sestra je starija nego ja.
Hladnije je u Londonu nego
u Zagrebu.

*My sister is older than me.
It is colder in London than
in Zagreb.*

b Use the preposition **od** followed by the genitive case:

Moja sestra je starija od mene.
Ta knjiga je skuplja od ove.

*My sister is older than me.
That book is more
expensive than this one.*

To say *as ... as possible*

The phrase **što prije** means *as soon as possible*. Other similar phrases are formed by putting **što** in front of the comparative form of the adjective or adverb:

što teže
što lakše

*as difficult as possible
as easily as possible*

Other command forms

You have learnt how to tell someone to do something. There are other forms relating to other people:

To say *let him come* or *let them come* use **neka** with the appropriate part of the verb:

Neka liječnik dođe što prije.

*Let the doctor come as
soon as possible.*

To say *let me see* or *let us see* use **da** with the appropriate part of the verb:

Da vidim vašeg muža.

Let me see your husband.

To say ...hurts

The word **boljeti** is used in a slightly different way from the English expression:

Boli me grlo.
Bole me leđa.

My throat hurts (aches).
My back hurts (aches).

You are literally saying that *the throat hurts me*. The word **leđa** is one of those words like **kola** which is a neuter plural word, so it has to be used with the plural form of the verb **bole**.

To say until

The word **dok** means *while*. When it is used with a negative verb it means *until*:

...dok nisam prestao kašljati. ...until I stopped coughing.

Subcategories of adjectives

There is another small group of adjectives like **bolestan** (*sick, ill*) which end in **-tan**, and lose both the **-t-** and the **-a-** when they change case ending:

Mark je bolestan.
Sandra je bolesna.

Mark is ill.
Sandra is ill.

Subcategories of nouns

A number of words which refer to parts of the body do not follow the standard patterns:

a uho/oko

The plural forms are feminine and follow a similar pattern:

nom.	uši ears	oči eyes
acc.	uši	oči
gen.	ušiju	očiju
dat.	ušima	očima
ins.	ušima	očima

b ruka (fem.) / noga (fem.) / prst (masc.)

These words follow the normal patterns except in the genitive plural. These forms are:

ruka	ruku
noga	nogu
prst	prstiju

The word **ruka** means both *hand* and *arm*.

The word **noga** means both *foot* and *leg*.

The word **prst** means both *finger* (**prst na ruci**) and *toe* (**prst na nozi**).

c rame

This word follows the same pattern as **vrijeme**:

nom.	rame
acc.	rame
gen.	ramena

It adds **-en** before the case endings.

Bole me ramena.

My shoulders hurt (ache).

d usta/leđa

These words are always in the plural and follow the pattern for neuter nouns:


Njegova usta su crvena.

His mouth is red.

Gledam njena leđa.

I am watching her back.

Practice

 1 Fill in the missing parts of the dialogue:

Bolesnik je kod liječnika. Vi ste bolesnik.

Liječnik Kako se osjećate, gospodine?

Bolesnik *I do not feel well.*

Liječnik Da li vas nešto boli?

Bolesnik *I have a headache. / My head hurts.*

Liječnik Kad vas je počela boljeti glava?

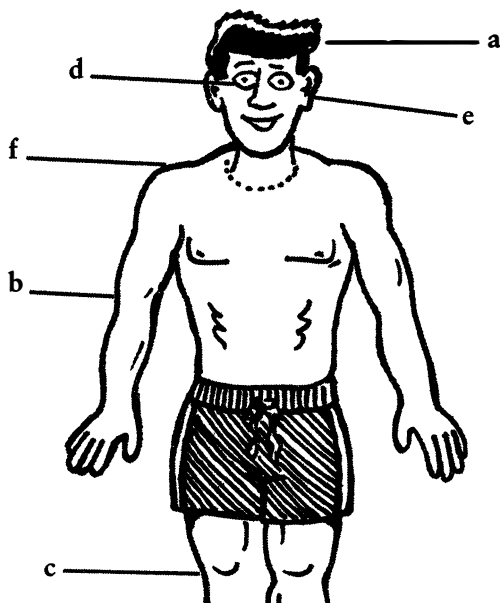
Bolesnik *It began to ache/hurt yesterday.*

Liječnik Moram priznati da ne izgledate dobro, gospodine. Da li vas još nešto boli?

Bolesnik *I had a stomachache last week, but that has passed.*

Liječnik Dat ću vam lijek. Ostanite kod kuće dok ne ozdravite.

- 2 Name the parts of the body indicated in the illustration below:



- ▶ 3 Change the adjectives in the sentences below into the required comparative forms with the correct case endings. They are given in brackets in the masculine nominative form.

- a Sandra je (star) od Jasne.
- b On je visok, ali je njegov brat (visok).
- c Jučer je rekao (mlad) sestri da danas neće doći na večeru.
- d Tko je (dobar), Mark ili Rudolf?
- e Moj kaput je (skup) od vašeg.
- f Bili smo zadovoljni (blag) klimom na Hvaru.
- g Da li si vidio (veseo) čovjeka?
- h Sjetila se njihove (velik) kuće u Varaždinu.

- 4 Give the superlative forms of the adjectives in brackets in the exercise above.
- 5 Change the adverbs in brackets in the sentences below into the correct comparative form:

- a Jasna (lijepo) pjeva nego Sandra.
- b (Toplo) je na Hvaru nego u Zagrebu.
- c Zimi je (hladno) u Rusiji nego u Engleskoj.
- d Meni je (lako) ići na odmor nego tebi.

6 Match the questions to the answers:

- | | | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|-----|------------------------------------|
| a | Moram li ja ići na kolodvor s tobom? | i | Još nije. |
| b | Je li Rudolf pročitao tu knjigu? | ii | Ne mogu dok ne završim ovaj posao. |
| c | Kako je danas izgledala Jasna? | iii | Ne moraš. |
| d | Ideš li u kino večeras? | iv | Loše je izgledala. |

Comprehension 1

Informacije o hotelu

- Molimo da svoj odlazak prijavite recepciji do 12 sati i da napustite sobu do 14 sati, jer zadržavanje sobe poslije 14 sati uvjetuje plaćanje za još jedan dan.
- Ako odlazite iz hotela molimo Vas da sobu zaključate i ključ predate na recepciji.
- Za Vaš auto stoje Vam na raspolaganju naše parkiralište i garaža uz minimalnu naplatu.
- Prema Vašoj želji peremo, glačamo i kemijski čistimo Vaše rublje u najkraće vrijeme.
- Prema Vašoj želji uslužujemo jela i pića u sobi uz naplatu servisa od 20%.

moliti	<i>to ask, beg</i>
prijaviti	<i>to announce</i>
napustiti	<i>to leave</i>
zadržavanje	<i>keeping</i>
uvjetovati	<i>to cause, bring about</i>
plaćanje	<i>payment</i>
Vas/Vaš	<i>(these words usually spelt with a capital letter when meaning one person)</i>
zaključati	<i>to lock</i>
predati	<i>to hand over</i>
na raspolaganju	<i>at (your) disposal</i>

parkiralište	<i>car park</i>
garaža	<i>garage</i>
uz minimalnu naplatu	<i>for a minimal fee</i>
prema Vašoj želji	<i>in accordance with your wishes</i>
prati (perem)	<i>to wash</i>
glačati	<i>to iron</i>
kemijski čistiti	<i>to dry-clean</i>
rublje	<i>laundry</i>
najkraće	<i>shortest</i>
usluživati	<i>to serve</i>
piće	<i>drink</i>

True or false?

- a Morate prijaviti svoj odlazak recepciji do 14 sati.
 b Parkiralište i garaža za auto ne koštaju mnogo.
 c Ne možete dobiti jela i pića u hotelskoj sobi.

Comprehension 2

Read the following passage and answer the questions that follow:

Kod liječnika

Rudolf se nije osjećao dobro. Imao je poslovni sastanak u gradu, ali je prije njega otišao k liječniku.

Liječnik Dobar dan, gospodine Šimuniću. Kako ste?

Rudolf Kad sam se jutros probudio, nisam se dobro osjećao. Ne znam što mi je. Sve me boli. Osjećam se sve gore kako dan prolazi.

Liječnik Da li ste popili aspirin?

Rudolf Nisam. Nisam znao što da radim. Rekao bih da sam inače zdrav čovjek.

Liječnik U pravu ste, gospodine, jeste zdrav čovjek. Ali se možete razboljeti kao i svi drugi ljudi. Da pogledam vaše oči ... i sada da pogledam u usta... Da, ja bih rekao da ste uhvatili neku infekciju. Dat ću vam antibiotik. Morate se odmarati. Uskoro će proći.

poslovni sastanak	<i>business meeting</i>
popiti aspirin	<i>to take an aspirin</i>
Nisam znao što da radim.	<i>I didn't know what to do.</i>
inače	<i>otherwise</i>
razboljeti se	<i>to fall ill</i>
kao i	<i>like, as well as</i>
uhvatiti infekciju	<i>to catch an infection</i>
antibiotik	<i>antibiotic</i>
odmarati se	<i>to rest</i>

- 1 Kada je Rudolf išao k liječniku?
 - a Prije poslovnog sastanka.
 - b Poslije poslovnog sastanka.
 - c Odmah poslije posla.

- 2 Što Rudolfa boli?
 - a Bole ga oči.
 - b Boli ga glava.
 - c Sve ga boli.

- 3 Što će liječnik dati Rudolfu?
 - a Dat će mu aspirin.
 - b Dat će mu antibiotik.
 - c Dat će mu infekciju.

16

poslovni ugovor

business contract

In this unit you will learn how to

- use words and expressions for a business meeting
- form complex sentences joined in the middle by *which*

► Dialogue

Mark i Rudolf su putovali u Osijek na poslovne pregovore s gospodinom Markovićem. On je generalni direktor jedne osiječke firme. U vlaku, čitajući najnovije podatke o Markovićevoj firmi, Mark je slušao i sve što mu je Rudolf pričao o njoj. Pročitavši te podatke, Mark je počeo ispitivati Rudolfa detaljnije. Konačno su stigli u Osijek i odmah krenuli na sastanak. Ušli su u Markovićev ured.

Marković Dobar dan, gospodo, dobro došli. Želite li kavu?

Rudolf Ja bih? A ti, Mark?

Mark I ja bih isto, molim vas.

Čekaju kavu govoreći o svakodnevnim stvarima. Kava stiže, a poslovni pregovori počinju.

pregovor (usually used in plural)	<i>negotiation</i>
generalni direktor	<i>general manager</i>
osiječki (adj.)	<i>Osijek, of Osijek</i>
čitajući	<i>reading</i>
podatak (usually used in plural)	<i>information</i>
pročitavši	<i>having read</i>
ispitivati, ispitati (ispitujem, ispitam)	<i>to question</i>
detaljnije	<i>in more detail</i>
konačno	<i>at last</i>
kretati, krenuti (krećem, krenem)	<i>to set off</i>
gospoda	<i>gentlemen</i>
govoreći	<i>speaking, talking</i>
svakodnevni	<i>everyday</i>

Marković Ovdje, u našoj firmi, smatramo da možemo prodati vaše proizvode na našem tržištu.

Mark Zašto?

Marković Zato što sve zavisi od marketinga i znanja trendova koji se mijenjaju iz dana u dan. Imamo transportni odjel s kamionima, imamo svoje prodavaonice, imamo i svoj reklamni odjel.

Mark Vidim da imate razvijenu infrastrukturu. Tražite li pravo na uvoz, ili proizvodnje pod licencijom?

Marković Tražimo isključivo pravo na uvoz. To je naš kratkoročni plan za sljedeću godinu dana. Poslije toga, razmotrit ćemo situaciju, i ako budemo imali uspjeha, otvorit ćemo

pregovore ponovo.

- Mark** Jeste li razmišljali kako ćete platiti za robu?
Marković Platit ćemo transferom preko banke.
Mark Poslat ću faks u London o našem razgovoru.
Marković Mogu vam reći da su svi naši uvjeti napisani u ovom pismu. Možete ga poslati u London.

	smatrati	<i>to consider</i>
	tržište	<i>market</i>
	proizvod	<i>product</i>
Zависи od... (followed by gen.)		<i>It depends on...</i>
	marketing	<i>marketing</i>
	znanje	<i>knowledge</i>
	trend	<i>trend</i>
	koji	<i>which</i>
mijenjati se, promijeniti se		<i>to change</i>
proizvođenje pod licencijom		<i>production under licence</i>
	isključiv	<i>exclusive</i>
	kratkoročni plan	<i>short-term plan</i>
za sljedeću godinu dana		<i>for the next year</i>
	razmatrati, razmotriti	<i>to examine, discuss</i>
	uspjeh	<i>success</i>
	otvarati, otvoriti	<i>to open</i>
	iz dana u dan	<i>from day to day</i>
	transportni odjel	<i>transport department</i>
	kamion	<i>lorry</i>
	reklamni odjel	<i>advertising department</i>
	razvijen	<i>developed</i>
	infrastruktura	<i>infrastructure</i>
	pravo na uvoz	<i>right to import</i>
	ponovo	<i>again</i>
	razmišljati, razmisliti	<i>to think about, consider</i>
	roba (sing. noun)	<i>goods</i>
	transfer preko banke	<i>bank transfer</i>
slati, poslati (šaljem, pošaljem)		<i>to send</i>
	faks	<i>fax</i>
	uvjet	<i>condition</i>
	napisan	<i>written</i>

True or false?

- a Gospodin Marković hoće prodati proizvode Markove firme.
 b Gospodin Marković nema kamiona.
 c Gospodin Marković će platiti za robu transferom preko banke.

Coffee

One of the first things you will be offered when visiting, either socially or on business, is coffee. The basic type of coffee is **turska kava** *Turkish coffee*. Coffee made in this way is strong and served in small cups. It is also becoming increasingly popular to drink espresso coffee and instant coffee.

Economic affairs

For many years after the Second World War the state of Yugoslavia had a communist government and an economy in which there was little room for private enterprise. Following Croatian independence industry has largely been privatized and modern forms of information technology and commercial practice have been rapidly introduced.

Information

Podatak means *a piece of information*. It is usually found in the plural **podaci**. If you want to find the information counter in a hotel or public building look for the sign **Informacije**.

Key phrases

How to:

- use words and expressions connected with business and commerce.
 - poslovni pregovori
 - proizvod
 - tržište
 - marketing
 - proizvođenje pod licencijom
 - kratkoročni plan
 - roba
 - transfer preko banke
 - faks

How it works

How to say *which*

The word **koji** has two uses. It is used to join together two parts of a sentence and to ask questions.

a Joining together

Sve zavisi od marketinga i od znanja trendova. Oni se mijenjaju iz dana u dan. *Everything depends on marketing and on knowledge of trends. They change from day to day.*

We can join these two sentences together:

Sve zavisi od marketinga i od znanja trendova koji se mijenjaju iz dana u dan. *Everything depends on marketing and on knowledge of trends which change from day to day.*

The word **koji** is the equivalent of English *which* or *who*. It is an adjective and its ending depends on to what it refers from the first part of the sentence and how it is used in the second part of the sentence. In the example above **koji** refers to **trendovi** *trends* and therefore it has to have a plural masculine ending. It is then used as the subject of the second part of the sentence and so has to be in the nominative case. It follows the same pattern of case endings as **moj**, so it has both **kojem/kojeg** and **kome/koga** forms. The long forms are used when referring to objects, and the short forms when referring to people.

Briefly, **koji** takes either singular or plural and masculine, feminine or neuter endings depending on to what it refers; while its case depends on how it is used. Look at the following example:

To je čovjek koga sam jučer vidio. *That is the man whom I saw yesterday.*

In this example **koga** refers to **čovjek** and so is masculine singular. It is used as the object of the verb **vidio** and so it is accusative (i.e. it is the thing which is seen and not the person who sees).

To je pismo u kojem su napisani uvjeti. *That is the letter in which the conditions are written.*
To je čovjek kome sam dao novac. *That is the person to whom I gave the money.*

(**Kojem** is used as the word refers to an object, and **kome** is used because the word refers to a person.)

The word for *which* after *to that* and *sve everything* is **što**:

Mark je slušao sve što je Rudolf govorio. *Mark listened to everything which Rudolf was saying.*

b Making questions

In questions *koji* means *which*:

Koju knjigu želite?

Which book do you want?

Koji je vaš stan?

Which is your flat?

Koja žena je uzela ključ?

Which woman took the key?

Kojoj ženi ste dali ključ?

*To which woman did you
give the key?*

It means *which one* from a larger number of possible options.

Reading, having read, written, etc.

These patterns of a verb are not often found in the spoken language. They are examples of a formal or bookish style. However, you may come across them in newspapers or documents. They are easily formed:

a Čitajući *reading*

This is formed by adding *-ći* to the *oni* form of the verb.

It is the equivalent of the part of the verb which ends in *-ing* in English. It often means *while doing, by doing or in doing* as in the following examples:

Slušajući radio, pisao je pismo. *While listening to the radio
he was writing a letter.*

Čitajući podatke, slušao je i sve što mu je Rudolf pričao. *Reading the information he
also listened to everything
which Rudolf told him.*

It is used when referring to two actions performed by the same subject which occur at the same time. It is formed only from imperfective verbs.

b Pročitavši *Having read*

This is formed by replacing *-o* at the end of the masculine past tense with *-vši*.

Pročitavši novine, počeo sam spremati večeru. *Having read the newspaper
I began to prepare dinner.*

Došavši u hotel, Sandra je uzela ključ od sobe. *Having arrived at the hotel
Sandra took the key to
the room.*

It is used when referring to two actions, the first being completed before the second takes place, performed by the same subject. It is formed only from perfective verbs.

c Napisan *written*

This is the equivalent in English of saying *something is done*. They are adjectives and agree with the noun to which they refer like any other adjective.

Uvjeti su napisani u pismu.

The conditions are written in the letter.

Pismo je napisano.

The letter is written.

Pismo je bilo napisano.

The letter was written.

It is formed from the infinitive:

i Infinitives which end in *-ati* replace *-ti* with *-n*:

napisati
čitati

napisan
čitán

ii Most infinitives which end in *-iti* and *-eti* (*-jeti*) replace *-iti* and *-eti* (*-jeti*) with *-jen*, and as the ending begins with *j* this may cause a preceding consonant to change as with comparative adjectives which take the *-ji* ending (see Unit 15):

vidjeti

viđen

iii Infinitives which end in *-nuti* replace *-ti* with *-t*:

okrenuti

okrenut

Subcategories of nouns

The plural forms of these three nouns do not follow the usual pattern:

gospodin
brat
dijete

gospoda
braća
djeca

gentlemen
brothers
children

Although they refer to more than one gentleman, brother and child these words are feminine singular nouns and they follow the regular pattern for feminine singular nouns which end in *-a* (hence, **gospodo** is the vocative form of **gospoda**). Adjectives which describe them also follow the regular pattern of feminine

singular endings, while verbs are plural. Study the following examples:

Djeca su visoka.	<i>The children are tall.</i>
Imaju visoku djecu.	<i>They have tall children.</i>
Gospoda su govorila engleski.	<i>The gentlemen were speaking English.</i>

In the last example the verbal element from *biti* is plural, while the ending on *govorila* is feminine singular.

More about time

In the phrase *za sljedeću godinu dana* the word *dana* has no meaning. It is often found after the words *tjedan week*, *mjesec month* and *godina year* without adding anything extra to the sense of the word.

More about cases

You have now reached a stage in Croatian when you can understand and produce for yourself sentences and phrases which are grammatically complicated. You have learnt all the basic forms of the verbs, case endings for adjectives (including comparative and superlative) and nouns. You have also learnt the basic meanings of those cases which often do away with the need for little words in English, such as *to*, *of*, *by*, etc. There is another example of the use of the instrumental case in this Unit. Look at these examples:

Gospodin Marković će platiti robu transferom preko banke.	<i>Mr Marković will pay for the goods by a transfer through the bank.</i>
Mark će poslati pismo gospodina Markovića faksom.	<i>Mark will send Mister Marković's letter by fax.</i>

In both sentences the instrumental case is used to mean *by*. The case refers to the *instrument* by which an action is performed.

Practice

- 1 Mark has to inform his office in London about his conversation with Mr Marković. Follow the guidelines below in order to write a brief letter about the event as if you were Mark. Do not try to use complicated language, split the ideas up into separate sentences. Your intention is to convey the basic points of information.

- *Say that you spoke with Mr Marković today.*
- *Say that he wants the exclusive right of import of our products from London.*
- *Say that you spoke about the conditions of the business contract with him.*
- *You are sending those conditions by fax.*
- *Say that you think the conditions are good. Mr Marković said that he would pay for the goods by bank transfer.*

2 Put the correct form of **koji** into the sentences below:

- a To je ugovor (koji) sam jučer pročitao.
- b Govorio sam s gospodinom Markovićem, (koji) je generalni direktor te firme.
- c Moja sestra, (koji) živi u Engleskoj, radi u bolnici.
- d Ovo je najbolja knjiga (koji) imam.
- e Da li je to čovjek (koji) ste dali ključ od moje sobe?
- f To je škola u (koji) radim.

3 Put the correct form of **koji** into the questions below:

- a (Koji) faks šaljete u London?
- b Od (koji) konobara ste dobili čašu vode?
- c U (koji) sobi je gospodin Bryant?
- d (Koji) žena je ušla u poštu?
- e O (koji) ugovoru govorite?
- f (Koji) sportom se bavite?

4 Make the bold parts of the following sentences plural:

- a **Dijete je bilo** kod kuće.
- b **Čovjek je ušao** u hotel.
- c Vidjeli smo **gospodina** u uredu.
- d **Gost je sjedio** u našoj dnevnoj sobi.
- e Dobili su **čašu vode**.
- f Dobila je pismo od **mlađeg brata**.
- g **Kiosk je ispred** kolodvora.
- h Nema **lijepog parka** u tom gradu.
- i Nema **ga** kod kuće.
- j Vidjeli su **njenog muža** u kavani.

5 Match the questions to the answers:

- | | | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|-----|-----------|
| a | Kamo šaljete faks? | i | Vlakom. |
| b | Kakvog čovjeka ste vidjeli tamo? | ii | Jesu. |
| c | Jesu li djeca bila u školi danas? | iii | U London. |
| d | Kako ćete putovati u Zagreb? | iv | Visokoga. |

Comprehension 1

Rudolf je napisao kratko pismo u kojem je rezervirao dvije sobe u jednom osiječkom hotelu.

Štovani gospodine,
 Želio bih rezervirati u Vašem hotelu dvije jednokrevetne
 sobe za osmi listopad. Ostali bismo tu jednu noć.
 Srdačno Vas pozdravlja
 Rudolf Šimunić.

The letter has a formal and polite tone, indicated by using the formula *Štovani gospodine* *Respected sir* and the conditional forms of the verb. The end formula *Srdačno Vas pozdravlja Rudolf Šimunić* (Lit. *Cordially greets you Rudolf Šimunić*) is also polite. You will learn more about letter writing in the last unit. If they were to stay for four days in Osijek Rudolf would have reserved the rooms *od osmog do dvanaestog listopada*.

True or false?

- a Rudolf je rezervirao jednu sobu u Osijeku.
- b Rudolf je rezervirao jednokrevetne sobe u Osijeku.
- c Rudolf i Mark su ostali jednu noć u Osijeku.

► Comprehension 2

Read or listen to the passage below and answer the following questions:

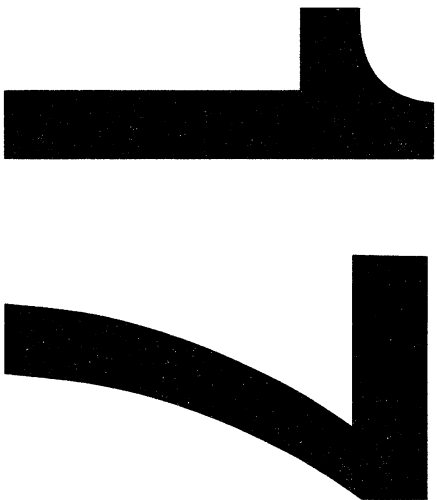
Odmah poslije sastanka Mark je napisao kratku poruku koju je htio poslati faksom svom šefu u London. Kao svi veći hoteli u Zagrebu i Hrvatskoj, i njihov hotel ima faks.

Štovani gospodine,
 Danas sam razgovarao sa gospodinom Markovićem.
 Razgovor je bio vrlo koristan. Šaljem Vam njegovo pismo
 zajedno sa ovim pismom. Preporučujem da pažljivo
 proučite njegove uvjete za ugovor. Mislim da možemo s
 njim surađivati. Naš kolega iz Zagreba, gospodin Šimunić,
 smatra da u Osijeku nećemo dobiti bolju ponudu.
 Srdačno Vas pozdravlja
 Mark Bryant

šef boss
 koristan useful
 pažljivo carefully

proučiti to study
 surađivati to co-operate
 ponuda offer

- 1 Odakle Mark šalje svoj faks?
 - a Iz ureda gospodina Markovića.
 - b Iz njihovog osiječkog hotela.
 - c Sa glavne pošte.
- 2 Što preporučuje Mark svom šefu?
 - a Da pažljivo prouči Markovićeve uvjete?
 - b Da pažljivo pročita njegovu poruku.
 - c Da dođe u Zagreb.
- 3 Što smatra Rudolf?
 - a Da neće dobiti ništa više od gospodina Markovića.
 - b Da neće dobiti bolju ponudu u Osijeku.
 - c Da je bolje da i Markov šef dođe u Osijek.



u Osijeku

in Osijek

In this unit you will learn how to

- say more numbers
- ask questions with *whose?*
- use reflexive verbs
- talk about changing money
- make general enquiries at hotel reception (Units 17 and 18 also include general revision exercises)

► Dialogue

Poslije sastanka Rudolf i Mark su izašli na ulicu. Mark je morao promijeniti novac. Zaustavili su se ispred banke i ušli. Mark je čekao u redu. U banci je bilo četvero ljudi.

- Mark** Kako danas stoji kurs?
Službenik Za koju valutu?
Mark Za engleske funte.
Službenik Danas je funta četrnaest kuna.
Mark Želim promijeniti sto funti. Da li primete putničke čekove?
Službenik Primamo, gospodine. Potpišite ovdje i ovdje i dajte mi, molim vas, putovnicu.

zaustavljati se, zaustaviti se	<i>to stop</i>
banka	<i>bank</i>
četvero ljudi	<i>four people</i>
Kako danas stoji kurs?	<i>What is the exchange rate today?</i>
službenik	<i>desk clerk, counter clerk</i>
valuta	<i>currency</i>
funta	<i>pound</i>
primati, primiti	<i>to receive, to accept</i>
putnički ček	<i>traveller's cheque</i>
potpisivati, potpisati (potpisujem, potpišem)	<i>to sign</i>
putovnica	<i>passport</i>

Poslije banke nastavili su put do hotela. Rudolf je prišao recepciji. Na recepciji su radila dvojica.

- Rudolf** Dobra večer. Rezervirao sam dvije jednokrevetne sobe.
Recepcija Dobra večer. Na čije ime, gospodine?
Rudolf Na ime Šimunić.
Recepcija Samo trenutak, gospodine, da vas nađem u knjizi... Da, tu ste. Rezervirali ste dvije sobe za jednu noć.
Rudolf Točno.
Recepcija Dat ću vam ključeve od soba, koje se nalaze na petom katu.
Rudolf Naš vlak za Zagreb polazi rano ujutro. Želio bih sada platiti račun.
Recepcija Naravno, gospodine. Kako želite platiti? U gotovom novcu ili na karticu?
Rudolf Koje kartice primete?

- Recepcija** Primamo American Express, Visa-karticu i Mastercard.
Rudolf Platit ću na karticu. A htio bih naručiti i telefonsko buđenje u šest sati i naručiti taksi za kolodvor.
- Recepcija** U redu. U koliko sati trebate taksi?
Rudolf Od koliko sati se služi doručak?
Recepcija Od šest do devet sati u restoranu.
Rudolf Onda, naručite, molim vas, taksi za petnaest do sedam.

nastavljati, nastaviti	<i>to continue</i>
dvojica	<i>two (men)</i>
Na čije ime?	<i>In whose name?</i>
samo trenutak	<i>just a moment</i>
nalaziti, naći (nalazim, nađem; nalazio, našao)	<i>to find</i>
točno	<i>exactly, right</i>
kat	<i>floor, storey</i>
polaziti, poći (polazim, pođem; polazio, pošao)	<i>to set off</i>
Želio bih platiti račun.	<i>I would like to pay the bill.</i>
gotov novac	<i>cash</i>
na karticu	<i>by credit card</i>
telefonsko buđenje	<i>alarm call (telephone)</i>
naručivati, naručiti (naručujem, naručim)	<i>to order</i>
služiti se, poslužiti se	<i>to be served</i>

True or false?

- a Mark želi promijeniti novac u hotelu.
 b Primaju putničke čekove u banci.
 c Rudolf će platiti račun na karticu.

i Changing money

Money can be changed in a bank, bureau de change (**mjenjačnica**) and in the larger hotels. Hotels often charge a higher fee for changing money than do the banks. Hotels and larger shops also accept major credit cards.

▶ Key phrases

How to:

- find somewhere to change money. **u banci**
u mjenjačnici

- ask for the rate of exchange, and in the currency.
- ask in whose name a booking is, and to reply.
- pay the bill.
- be asked *how do you want to pay?*
- pay the bill ... cash?
... credit card?
- order an alarm call.
- book a taxi.
- ask when breakfast is served.

Kako danas stoji kurs?
za engleske funte

Na čije ime?
Na ime...

Želio bih platiti.

Kako želite platiti?
u gotovom novcu?
na karticu?

naručiti telefonsko buđenje
naručiti taksi
Od koliko sati se služi
doručak?

How it works

More about numbers

In addition to the ones which you have already learnt there are two further sets of numbers. The first one refers to groups of children or to groups in which there are both men and women. The second refers to groups of men.

a Children/mixed groups

These are as follows:

dvoje	2	petoro	5
troje	3	šestoro	6
četvoro	4	sedmoro	7

Higher numbers follow the same pattern, i.e. they add *-oro* to the number. However, they are not so frequently used when referring to groups of more than ten. They are usually used alone (*dvoje* means *two children* or more often *a man and a woman*), or in combinations with the genitive case:

Vidio sam dvoje djece.
Petoro ljudi je došlo.

*I saw two children.
Five people came.
(adults with children perhaps)*

When you use these numbers as a subject the verb is singular with the neuter gender in the past tense.

b Groups of men

These are as follows:

dvojica	2	petorica	5
trojica	3	šestorica	6
četvorica	4	sedmorica	7

Higher numbers follow the same pattern, i.e. they add *-orica* to the number. However, they are rarely used when referring to groups of more than ten. They are usually used alone (*dvojica* can only mean *two men*) or in combinations with the genitive case:

Imam dvojicu braće.
Njih trojica su došla.

*I have two brothers.
The three of them came.*

These are feminine nouns and they follow the regular pattern of case endings for feminine nouns. When you use these numbers as a subject the verb is plural with the feminine singular ending in the past tense (like *djeca*, etc).

It is often possible to avoid using these numbers. You can say *dva djeteta* or *dva brata*, but the other forms with *dvoje* and *dvojica* are in common usage.

Numbers as the subject

Subjects with *jedan*:

Jedan stol je u sobi.
Jedan stol je stajao u sobi.

*One table is in the room.
One table was standing
in the room.*

Jedna stolica je stajala u sobi.

*One chair was standing
in the room.*

With *jedan* you use a singular verb and the gender of the past tense is determined logically. The same also goes for compound numbers with *jedan*:

Trideset jedno dijete je stajalo
na ulici.

*Thirty-one children were
standing on the street.*

(compound numbers are those above 20; numbers 11–20 are not compound, they are one word, e.g. *jedanaest*)

Subjects with *dva/dvije*:

Dva službenika su radila
u hotelu.

*Two desk clerks were
working in the hotel.*

Dvije žene su plivale u moru.

*Two women were
swimming in the sea.*

With **dva** and **dvije** you use a plural verb and with the past tense use **-a** with **dva** (masc. and neut. nouns) and **-e** with **dvije** (fem. nouns). The numbers **tri** and **četiri** follow the same pattern. The same also goes for compound numbers.

Dvadeset četiri konobara
su radila u hotelskom
restoranu.

*Twenty-four waiters worked
in the hotel restaurant.*

Subjects with **pet**, **šest**, etc:

Pet kreveta je stajalo u sobi.
Dvanaest sati je prošlo.

*Five beds stood in the room.
Twelve hours passed.*

With all other numbers you use a singular verb and the gender of the past tense is neuter. The same also goes for compound numbers:

Četrdeset osam sati je prošlo.

Forty-eight hours passed.

To say *whose*

The word for *whose* is **čiji**. It is an adjective and follows the usual pattern for soft adjectives. It always adds endings to **čij-**:

Na čije ime?

In whose name?

Čija je to žena?

Whose wife is that?

U čijem stanu sjedimo?

In whose flat are we sitting?

Ispred čije kuće ste parkirali
auto?

*In front of whose house did
you park the car?*

More about reflexive verbs

Some verbs can be used either with or without the reflexive pronoun **se**. Compare the following sentences:

Zaustavili su se ispred banke.

*They stopped in front of
the bank.*

Zaustavili su auto.

They stopped the car.

Školski dan se završava u četiri.

*The school day finishes
at four.*

Rudolf je završio posao.

Rudolf finished the job.

The first sentence in each example uses **se**. The second sentence does not use **se** and it answers the question *what* (*What did they stop?* and *What did Rudolf finish?*). When you have an object in such sentences you do not use **se**. Other examples are:

On se mijenja.

Mark mijenja novac.
Vratili smo se sa Hvara.
Vratili smo ključ recepciji.

He is changing.

(e.g. in personality)
*Mark is changing money.
We returned from Hvar.
We returned the key
to reception.*

Practice

1 Tko ste vi?

Ja sam Mark Bryant. Ja sam Englez. Radim u Zagrebu.
Imam trideset sedam godina. Oženjen sam.

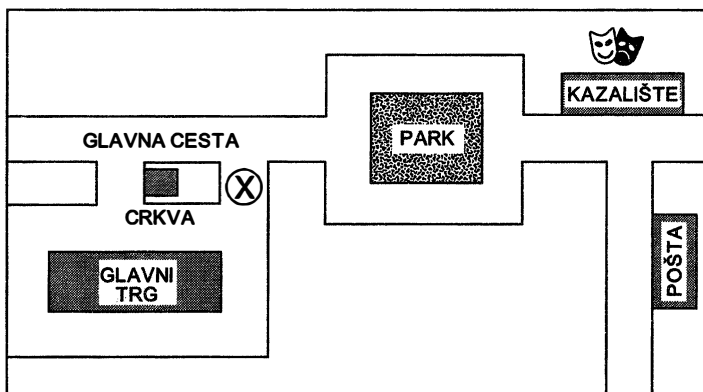
Make up similar sentences for:

	Name	Nationality	City	Age	Married
a	Jasna	Croatian	Zagreb	23	no
b	Vjeko	Croatian	Split	48	yes
c	Margaret	English	Leeds	31	yes
d	Eva	German	Berlin	34	no

▶ 2 You are at the spot marked X. You ask a female passer-by: **Molim vas, gospođo kako mogu doći do ...**

- a kazališta?
- b pošte?
- c crkve?
- d glavnog trga?

Give the directions in Croatian.



- ▶ 3 You walk into a restaurant and sit down for dinner. Complete the following dialogue between yourself and the waiter:

Dobra večer.

Good evening. Do you have the menu, please?

Da, izvolite, gospodo. Što biste željeli?

I would like soup, fish and salad.

Želite li nešto popiti, gospodo?

What would you recommend?

Imamo vrlo dobro bijelo vino.

Then, I would like the white wine, please.

A želite li nešto poslije?

May I have a coffee, please?

Naravno. Hvala.

- 4 You are looking at the railway timetable in Zagreb. At what times do the following trains leave and at what times do they arrive at their destinations?

U koliko sati polazi vlak?

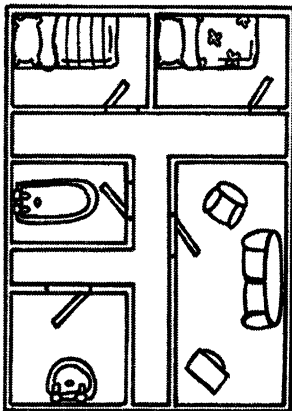
Vlak polazi u _____ iz Zagreba, i stiže u _____ u Osijek.

Zagreb			
a	8.00	12.10	Osijek
b	11.35	14.20	Rijeka
c	12.00	17.55	Split

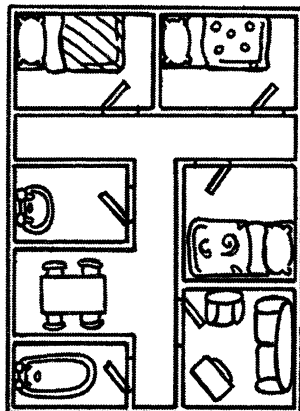
- 5 Kakav stan imate?

Look at the diagrams below and describe in Croatian the number and types of rooms:

a



b



6 Fill in the date either in the nominative or the genitive as required:

- a Igram tenis s Markom u srijedu (24 March)
- b Idem u Split početkom sljedećeg mjeseca (1 June)
- c Danas je (3 August)
- d Rudolf misli da će doći u London (18 November)

Comprehension 1

Here is a recipe for the **zagrebački odrezak** which the friends ordered when they went to a restaurant in Unit 5.

- 6 velikih tankih telećih odrezaka
- sol i papar po ukusu
- 6 malih ploški kuhane šunke
- 6 malih ploški sira
- brašno
- jaje stučeno s malo mlijeka
- mrvice
- 3 velike žlice ulja
- 3 velike žlice maslaca

Stavite sol i papar na teleće odreske.

Stavite na polovicu odreska plošku šunke i na nju plošku sira.

Stavite jednu polovicu odreska na drugu.

Dobro pritisnite krajeve mesa.

Stavite odreske prvo u brašno, zatim u jaje i na kraju u mrvice.

Dobro zagrijte maslac i ulje i pržite odreske na umjerenoj vatri dok ne budu svijetlosmeđi s obje strane.

Odreske poslužite s miješanom salatom, kriškama limuna i pireom od krumpira.

tanak	<i>thin</i>
teleći	<i>veal (adj.)</i>
sol (fem.)	<i>salt</i>
papar	<i>pepper</i>
po ukusu	<i>according to taste</i>
ploška kuhane šunke	<i>slice of cooked ham</i>
ploška sira	<i>slice of cheese</i>
brašno	<i>flour</i>
jaje stučeno s malo mlijeka	<i>egg beaten with a little milk</i>
mrvice	<i>breadcrumbs</i>

ulje	<i>oil</i>
maslac	<i>butter</i>
polovica	<i>half</i>
pritisnuti	<i>to pinch (together)</i>
kraj	<i>edge, end</i>
zatim	<i>then, next</i>
na kraju	<i>in the end, finally</i>
zagrijati	<i>to heat, warm up</i>
pržiti	<i>to fry</i>
na umjerenj vatri	<i>on a medium heat</i>
svijetlosmeđi	<i>light brown</i>
s obje strane	<i>on both sides</i>
miješana salata	<i>mixed salad</i>
kriška limuna	<i>wedge of lemon</i>
pire od krumpira	<i>mashed potato</i>

Now check your comprehension of the recipe with the translation which follows.

*6 large thin veal cutlets (buy thick steaks and beat them)
salt and pepper according to taste
6 small slices of cooked ham
6 small slices of cheese (e.g. cheddar)
flour
egg beaten with a little milk
breadcrumbs
3 large spoons of oil
3 large spoons of butter*

Put salt and pepper on the veal cutlets.

Put a slice of ham on one half of the cutlet and a slice of cheese on top of that.

Put one half of the cutlet over the other half.

Pinch the edges of the meat firmly together.

Put the cutlets first into flour, then into the egg, and at the end into the bread crumbs.

Heat the butter and oil and fry the cutlets on a medium heat until light brown on both sides.

Serve the cutlets with a mixed salad, wedges of lemon and mashed potato.

Comprehension 2

Read the following **mali oglasi** *small advertisements* and answer the questions below:

IZDAJEM trosoban komforan stan u centru Zagreba. Centralno grijanje, telefon. Plaćanje po dogovoru. Šifra 'Stan 1'.

IZDAJEM dvokrevetne sobe u vili na Braču. Blizu plaže i svih turističkih objekata. Posebni ulazi. Javite se na tel. 223 456 (Split).

IZDAJEM apartman u Dubrovniku. Dvije spavaće sobe, kupaonica i kuhinja. Balkon ima pogled na more. Tel. 155 677.

PRODAJEM poslovnu prostoriju u zgradi u centru Zagreba. Prodavaonica u prizemlju i ured na prvom katu. Šifra 'Posao'.

TRAŽIMO trosoban stan u centru Zagreba sa centralnim grijanjem i telefonom. Šifra 'Englezi'.

trosoban	<i>three-roomed</i>
komforan	<i>comfortable</i>
grijanje	<i>heating</i>
po dogovoru	<i>by agreement</i>
šifra	<i>box number</i>
vila	<i>villa</i>
objekt	<i>facility</i>
poseban ulaz	<i>separate entry</i>
prostorija	<i>space</i>
prizemlje	<i>ground floor</i>

True or false?

- a Stan u Zagrebu ima centralno grijanje.
- b Nema posebnih ulaza u sobe na Braču.
- c Netko u Zagrebu prodaje prodavaonicu u prizemlju.

18

tri pisma three letters

**In this unit you will learn
more about**

- **writing letters and short
messages for people both in a
social and in a business
context**

Štovani...

Mark je dobio poslovno pismo od gospodina Markovića.

3. X. 2002.

Štovani gospodine Bryante,

Šaljem Vam kopiju pisma koje sam dobio iz Londona. Možemo sklopiti ugovor prema uvjetima koji su dogovoreni. Čestitam Vam na uspjehu u ovim našim pregovorima. Predložio bih Vam da još jednom dođete u Osijek na razgovor o mogućnosti uvoza i izvoza, a ja bih posjetio London poslije našeg sastanka.

Radujem se našoj budućoj suradnji.

Srdačno Vas pozdravlja

Marko Marković

221

tri pisma

18

kopija	<i>copy</i>
sklopiti ugovor	<i>sign a contract</i>
dogovoren	<i>agreed</i>
čestitati (followed by dat.)	<i>to congratulate</i> (someone)
predlagati, predložiti (predlažem, predložim)	<i>to suggest</i>
izvoz	<i>export</i>
posjećivati, posjetiti (posjećujem, posjetim)	<i>to visit</i>
budući	<i>future</i>
suradnja	<i>co-operation</i>

Sandra je dobila kratko pismo od Jasne.

5. X. 2002.

Draga Sandra,

Morala sam ti odmah pisati. Ne možeš zamisliti što se sinoć desilo! Rudolf me je zaprosio. Udat ću se za njega. Nije više pitao da li bih ja htjela da se vjenčamo. Nestalo je to kolebanje. Vodili smo ozbiljan razgovor o našim osjećajima i o praktičnim stvarima. Previše sam uzbuđena da bih nastavila pisati. Javi se što prije!

Voli te

Jasna

zamisliti	<i>to imagine</i>
zaprošiti	<i>ask for a girl's hand in marriage</i>
nestajati, nestati (nestajem, nestanem)	<i>to disappear</i>
kolebanje	<i>hesitation</i>
voditi razgovor	<i>to have a conversation</i>
praktičan	<i>practical</i>
uzbuđen	<i>excited</i>
nastavljati, nastaviti	<i>to continue</i>

Sandra piše pismo mami i tati.

10. X. 2002.

Dragi mama i tata,

Ispricavam se što dugo nisam pisala. Otkad smo se vratili s odmora život je postao burniji. Rudolf i Jasna će se vjenčati. Još se ne zna kada će to biti, ali mislim da ćemo imati svadbu tokom ove zime!

Druga stvar je još važnija. Mark je ovdje počeo otvarati tržište za svoju londonsku firmu. Njegovi šefovi su, očito, jako zadovoljni njime. Ponudili su mu da ostane u Zagrebu, i da postane glavni predstavnik u cijelom ovom kraju Europe! Naravno, mi smo dugo razgovarali o ponudi, i došli smo do zaključka da bismo ovdje mogli lijepo živjeti. Odgovara nam grad, našli smo prijatelje a nismo daleko od Londona (samo dva sata avionom!). Mark je ovih dana imao mnogo posla u gradu, dok sam ja tražila stan. Pravi stan!

Pored toga, pisala sam svojoj školi da dajem ostavku. Jasna i moje prijateljice su me ohrabrile da ću naći posao kao nastavnica engleskog jezika. Pravo da vam kažem, već sam dobila posao u jednoj privatnoj školi za strane jezike.

Dolazimo u London za Božić. Pričat ćemo i tada o našem boravku u Zagrebu i u drugim mjestima, ne samo u prošlosti nego i u budućnosti.

Vole vas

Sandra i Mark

ispričavati se, ispričati se	<i>to apologize</i>
otkad	<i>from when, since</i>
buran	<i>stormy</i>
Još se ne zna.	<i>It is still not known.</i>
svadba	<i>wedding</i>
tokom ove zime	<i>during this winter</i>
važan	<i>important</i>
očito	<i>evidently, obviously</i>
nuditi, ponuditi	<i>to offer</i>
doći do zaključka	<i>to come to the conclusion</i>
odgovarati (with dat.)	<i>to suit, correspond</i>
pravi	<i>real</i>
ostavka	<i>resignation</i>
ohrabrivati, ohrabriti (ohrabrujem, ohrabrim)	<i>to encourage, cheer up</i>
nastavnica	<i>teacher</i>
pravo da vam kažem	<i>to tell you the truth</i>
privatna škola	<i>private school</i>
strani jezik	<i>foreign language</i>
Božić	<i>Christmas</i>
tađa	<i>then</i>
ne samo... nego i...	<i>not only... but also...</i>

True or false?

- a Gospodin Marković je pozvao Marka u Osijek.
 b Rudolf i Jasna će se vjenčati.
 c Sandra je tražila stan za sebe i za Marka.

▶ Key phrases

Idiomatic and other phrases:

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| • sign a contract | sklopiti ugovor |
| • congratulations on your success | čestitam vam na uspjehu |
| • to have a conversation | voditi razgovor |
| • it is not yet known | još se ne zna |
| • to come to a conclusion | doći do zaključka |
| • to hand in one's resignation | dati ostavku |
| • to tell you the truth | pravo da vam kažem |
| • not only... but also... | ne samo... nego i... |

How it works

Writing letters

There are a variety of formal and informal conventions used in writing letters.

a Formal

Beginning with:

Štovani gospodine...

Dear sir / Dear Mr...

Štovana gospođo...

Dear madam / Dear Mrs...

As you are addressing someone directly the vocative case is used. An alternative beginning is:

Štovani kolega

Štovana kolegice

The tone here is not quite so formal. The words **kolega** (masc. although ending in -a) and **kolegica** mean *colleague* but are more frequently used to refer to people with whom you work.

Such letters may end with:

Srdačno Vas pozdravlja...

Yours sincerely...

b Informal

Beginning with:

Dragi...

Dear... (to a man)

Draga...

Dear... (to a woman)

An alternative beginning is:

Zdravo...!

Hi...! (to a man or woman)

But in both instances you again use the vocative case for the name of the person to whom you are writing.

Such letters may end with:

Voli te...

Love... (when signed by one person)

Vole te...

Love... (when signed by more than one person)

An alternative ending is the less intimate:

Tvoj

Yours (signed by a man)

Tvoja

Yours (signed by a woman)

Another thing to bear in mind when writing letters is that there is a convention to spell **Vi/Vas**, etc. with a capital letter when addressing one person.

How to say from

When saying from a place use **iz** and when saying from a person use **od**. When you would normally use **na** with a noun to mean *being there* or *going there*, then you use **s/sa** to mean *from there*. Look at the following examples:

Izašli smo iz sobe.	<i>We have come out of the room.</i>
Dobio je pismo iz Zagreba.	<i>He received a letter from Zagreb.</i>
Dobio je pismo od svog šefa.	<i>He received a letter from his boss.</i>
Idemo na odmor.	<i>We are going on holiday.</i>
Bili smo na odmoru.	<i>We were on holiday.</i>
Vratili smo se s odmora.	<i>We have returned from holiday.</i>

How to say then

You have learnt two words for *then*:

onda *then next*

Stigli smo u Split, onda smo kupili karte za brod.	<i>We arrived in Split, then we bought tickets for the boat.</i>
--	--

tada *at that time*

Išli smo na Hvar na odmor. Tada sam bio još dijete.	<i>We went to Hvar on holiday. I was still a child then.</i>
---	--

Ispričavam se što

You usually use the word **da** to mean *that* in sentences like:

Rekao mi je da...	<i>He told me that...</i>
Mislio sam da...	<i>I thought that...</i>

However, in certain expressions the word **što** is used. These are in sentences in which you are about to give a reason for something. Look at the following examples:

Ispričavam se što...	<i>I am sorry that...</i> (meaning <i>I apologize for not having done something after which you can expect an explanation</i>)
----------------------	--

Sretan sam što...

I am happy that...
(meaning *I am happy*
because of the following
reasons)

Practice

- 1 You are in the tourist office in Zagreb. You want to know how much a particular journey costs and how long it takes. Make up the questions and answers as indicated in the example.

Example:

autobus, Rijeka, 250 kuna, 6 hours

Koliko košta autobusna karta za Rijeku?
Dvjesto pedeset kuna.

Koliko dugo traje put autobusom do Rijeke?
Šest sati.

- a avion, Dubrovnik, 900 kuna, 45 minutes
- b vlak, Osijek, 380 kuna, 5 hours 10 minutes
- c autobus, Split, 235 kuna, 5 hours 30 minutes

- 2 Look at the weather forecasts for the following towns and answer the questions below:

Zagreb: Ujutro kratkotrajna magla, kasnije sunčano.

Pula: Vjetar slab. Dnevna temperatura od 22°C do 25°C.

Zadar: Ujutro oblačno. Dnevna temperatura od 20°C do 22°C.

Šibenik: Ujutro moguća kiša. Po podne slab vjetar.

Split: Jutarnja temperatura od 14°C do 18°C. Dnevna od 25°C do 29°C.

Hvar: Cijeli dan sunčano i slab vjetar.

Dubrovnik: Ujutro sumaglica. Danju sunčano.


- a U kojem gradu je moguća kiša?
- b Koji grad ima dnevnu temperaturu od 20°C do 22°C.
- c U kojem gradu je sunčano cijeli dan?
- d Koji grad ima kratkotrajnu maglu?

- 3 Answer the following questions:

- a Kako se kaže na hrvatskom 'I have a headache'?
- b Kako se kaže na hrvatskom 'I am going to the doctor's'?

- c Što znači riječ 'razglednica' na engleskom?
 d Što znači 'zubna pasta' na engleskom?

4 You want to reserve a room at a hotel. Write a short letter stating that you want a double room from 14 to 20 July.

 5 You arrive at your hotel and you have some enquiries to make at reception. Fill in your part of the dialogue:

Good evening.

Dobra večer, gospodine.

I would like an alarm call at 7.15 in the morning, please.

U redu, gospodine. Odlazite li sutra?

Yes, I have to go to London as soon as possible. I have a business meeting there. I want to book a taxi for the airport, please.

U koliko sati trebate taksi?

At 8.00, please. Where is breakfast served?

U restoranu, gospodine.

And I shall pay the bill now.

U redu, gospodine. Nadam se da ste zadovoljni našim hotelom?

Very pleased, thank you.

6 What do you say to people when:

- a meeting them for the first time?
 b greeting them in the morning?
 c saying goodbye?
 d saying good night?

Comprehension

Sandra je poslala pismo roditeljima. Tjedan dana kasnije javili su joj se njeni roditelji iz Londona. Imali su samo jednu poruku za Sandru i Marka 'Čestitamo vam!'

Unit 1

Dialogue True (T), False (F) a T b T c F

Practice 1 a prijateljica b dobra večer c oprostite 2 a Ja sam Jasna. Ja sam Hrvatica. Govorim hrvatski. b Ja sam Rudolf. Ja sam Hrvat. Govorim hrvatski. c Ja sam Sandra. Ja sam Engleskinja. Govorim engleski. 3 a Ja sam Hans. Ja sam Nijemac. Govorite li njemački? Da, govorim njemački. b Ja sam Pierre. Ja sam Francuz. Govorite li francuski? Da, govorim francuski. c Ja sam Ivan. Ja sam Rus. Govorite li ruski? Da, govorim ruski. 4 a Govorite li engleski? b Govorite li francuski? c Govorite li hrvatski? d Govorite li srpski? 5 a dobro jutro b dobar dan c dobra večer d do viđenja 6 Dobra večer. Kako ste? / Drago mi je. Ja sam... / Laku noć. 7 a Da vas upoznam. Ovo je Mark. Mark je moj muž. b Da vas upoznam. Ovo je Sandra. Sandra je moja žena. Comprehension a F b T c T.

Unit 2

Dialogue a F b F c T.

Practice 1 a Volim. Ne volim. b Govorim. Ne govorim. c Jesam. Nisam. d Volim. Ne volim. e Želim. Ne želim. f Želim ići. Ne želim ići. g Volim ići. Ne volim ići. h Idem. Ne idem. 2 a Voliš li kavu? b Govoriš li engleski? c Jesi li ti Englez? d Voliš li London? e Želiš li živjeti u Londonu? f Želiš li ići u grad? g Voliš li ići na posao? h Ideš li na kavu? 3 a ja sam/učim b ti želiš/ideš c mi razumijemo/učimo d vi ste/učite. 4 a grad b kavanu c školu d Zagreb e posao f kavu g gradu h Londonu i školi j poslu k kavani l predgrađu. 5 a želimo/Londonu b želim/Zagreb c ideš/kavu d živim/gradu e živimo/predgrađu f volite/poslu. 6 a ii b iv c i d iii. 7 a dobra b žedna c naše d vaš e moja/dobra f tvoja g gladan. Comprehension a T b F c F.

Unit 3**Dialogue a F b T c T.****Practice 1 a** Ja moram/mogu **b** ti govoriš/razumiješ **c** on dolazi/radi **d** mi vidimo/idemo **e** vi ste/govorite **f** oni idu/rade.**2 a** parku **b** kavane **c** trgu **d** drveta **e** grad **f** poštu. **3 a** Jasnu **b** spomenik **c** kavu/sok **d** vino **e** školu **f** gospodina. **4 a** njen **b** njegovo **c** njena **d** njihov **e** njihovo **f** njihov. **5 a** On je na lijevo ispred koldvora. Nije daleko od pošte. **b** Gdje mogu kupiti marke i koverta? Gdje je pošta? **c** Kamo Rudolf ide? Gdje radi? **d** Da, gleda Sandru. Sandra je blizu zgrade.**6 a** ona **b** on **c** oni **d** ona **e** one **f** ono **g** oni **h** on.**Comprehension a T b F c T. 1 a 2 c 3 b****Unit 4****Dialogue a F b F c F.****Practice 1 a** dvije kune **b** četiri kune **c** dvanaest kuna (osamnaest kuna) **2 b** Sandra hoće razglednicu. Koliko košta razglednica? Razglednica košta četiri kune. **c** Mark hoće pivo. Koliko košta pivo? Pivo košta petnaest kuna. **d** Jasna hoće šampon. Koliko košta šampon? Šampon košta dvadeset kuna.**e** Zvonko hoće marku. Koliko košta marka? Marka košta dvije kune. **f** Velimir hoće marku za Englesku. Koliko košta marka za Englesku? Marka za Englesku košta dvanaest kuna.**3 a** marke/razglednice **b** parkove/spomenici **c** hoteli **d** ljudi **e** zgrade **f** koverta. **4** Dobar dan. Imate li razglednice? / Mogu li vidjeti velike razglednice? / Koliko košta jedna velika razglednica? / Dajte mi tri, molim vas. / Hvala. Do viđenja.**5 a** Mark daje kavu Rudolfu. **b** Čovjek daje marku Jasni. **c** Mi dajemo sapun mami. **d** Žena daje pivo Velimiru. **e** Oni daju novac čovjeku. **f** Konobar daje vino Branki. **6 a** ii **b** iv **c** i **d** iii. **7 a** mogu **b** govorite **c** žive **d** jeste **e** idu **f** volim.**Comprehension a T b T c F. 1 b 2 c 3 c.****Unit 5****Dialogue a T b F c F.****Practice 1 a** mu **b** nam **c** vam **d** joj **e** im **f** mi **g** ti **h** joj **i** mi **j** nam. **2 a** Jasni **b** konobarima **c** čovjeka **d** zgradu **e** kavu **f** prijateljima **g** stolom/Jasnom **h** konobare **i** cigarete/novine **j** jezike. **3** Konobaru! Dobar dan. Da li imate jelovnik? / Hvala / Što mi preporučujete? / Više volim meso. Ja bih meso i salatu, molim vas. / Više volim crno, i mogu li dobiti čašu vode?**4 a** iii **b** i **c** ii **d** iv. **5 a** Imate li jelovnik? **b** Imate li ribu i salatu? **c** Dva piva, molim vas. **d** Mogu li dobiti čašu vode?**6** Dubrovnik. **7 a** Volite li pivo? **b** Volite li pivo? **c** Kamo idete sutra? **d** Želite li piti bijelo vino? **e** Volite li ići u grad? **f** Mogu

li dobiti čašu vode? 8 a kruha b parkova c salate d čovjeka
e prijatelja f vina g ljudi h Engleza i kave j razglednica.

Comprehension a F b F c F. 1 c 2 c 3 b.

Unit 6

Dialogue a T b F c F.

Practice 1 a pij b popijte c dođi d uzmite. 2 a sići b piti c doći
d dati. 3 a Marka/Sandre b centru c centar d centru e trga
f trgu g hotela/restorana h večeru i kolodvora
j drveta/parku/stanice. 4 a Jasni/salatu b autobusom
c Londona d Konobaru e Marku. 5 a Idite ravno i skrenite u
drugu ulicu desno. b Idite do glavne ceste, skrenite lijevo onda
skrenite u prvu ulicu lijevo. c Idite do glavne ceste, skrenite
desno onda skrenite u prvu ulicu desno. d Idite ravno i trg je
na lijevo. 6 Hoću vas pozvati k meni danas. / Žao mi je.
Možete li doći sutra? / U osam sati. / Uzmite autobus četrnaest
ili tramvaj šest preko puta parka i siđite na sedmoj stanici.
Moj stan je u bloku preko puta kazališta. / Moja adresa je ...
Moj telefonski broj je ... 7 a Idemo k njemu. b Konobar joj je
daje. c Gledamo ih na ulici. d Idite do njega. e Moram ih
kupiti. f Oni im moraju pisati. g Rudolf stanuje blizu njega.
h Oni je piju.

Comprehension a F b F c T. 1 b 2 b 3 a.

Unit 7

Dialogue a F b T c F.

Practice 1 a star b vruć c svjež a d odlično e žedna f skupa
g bijelo h velika. 2 a lijepom b velike c skupe d treću e starog
f velike g glavni h dobru/gradskoj. 3 a Pierre je Francuz. Živi u
Francuskoj. Radi u uredu. b Vjekoslav je Hrvat. Živi u
Hrvatskoj. Radi u restoranu. c Branka je Srпкиnja. Živi u
Srbiji. Radi u hotelu. d Maša je Ruskinja. Živi u Rusiji. Radi u
školi. 4 a Brankinom b Markove c Sandrinu d Markov, e
Rudolfov f Velimirovu. 5 Jeste li oženjeni, Rudolf? / Je li Jasna
udata? 6 a ii b iv c iii d i. 7 dvadeset dva, četrdeset sedam,
šezdeset četiri, dvadeset devet, sedamnaest, jedanaest, četrdeset
tri, trideset osam, sedamdeset sedam, pedeset osam, devedeset,
šezdeset jedan.

Comprehension a F b T c T. 1 a 2 a 3 a.

Unit 8

Dialogue a T b F c F

Practice 1 a glavne b njegovom c crno d velikih e tvoju
f udobnim. 2 a poslije b do c na d kroz e kod f iz. 3 a U
dnevnoj sobi imam tri naslonjača, jedan stolić i televizor u

uglu. b U kuhinji imam frižider, zamrzivač i ormare. c Imam tamo radni stol i dvije police s knjigama. d Imam veliki stol i šest stolica za goste. 4 a iv b i c ii d iii. 5 a u osam i trideset (u pola devet) b petnaest do četiri c sedam i deset d deset do sedam e od devet sati do pet i petnaest. 6 a prije podne b večeras c noću d sutra.

Comprehension a T b T c T. 1 b 2 c 3 b

Unit 9

Dialogue a T b F c F.

Practice 1 a Sviđaju im se ove knjige. b Sviđa mi se nogomet.

c Da li vam se sviđa plivanje? (Sviđa li vam se plivanje?)

d Rudolfu se sviđa košarka. e Sandri i Jasni se sviđa

badminton. 2 a Čovjek mu ih daje. b Da li joj žena daje

novac? c Vidim ga blizu spomenika. d Ljudi je piju u kavani.

e Mark je gleda. f Pišemo joj. g Dajem im ih. h Sjeća ga se u

Londonu. 3 Da li vam se sviđa plivanje? / Bavite li se sportom?

/ I ja volim igrati rukomet. Gdje je rukometno igralište? / Da li

imaju zatvoren bazen? / U koliko sati radi? / Kada vi idete u

sportski centar? 4 a svaki dan b svake subote c u srijedu d zimi

e od svibnja do rujna f petkom g u proljeće h u nedjelju i u

ožujku, j u subotu

Comprehension a F b T c T. 1 b 2 b 3 a.

Unit 10

Dialogue a F b T c T.

Practice 1 a njima b joj c nama d mnome e ih f njime g me

h vama i me j tobom. 2 a Da li vam je teško? b Je li joj lako?

(Da li joj je lako?) c Da li im je jasno? d Je li vam jasno? 3 a

Da, teško mi je. Ne, nije mi teško. b Da, jasno im je. Ne, nije

im jasno. c Da, jasno mu je. Ne, nije mu jasno. d Da, lako mi

je. Ne, nije mi lako. 4 a kako b koliko c kakav d kamo e kada

f tko g gdje h što. 5 a iii b ii c iv d i 6 a po Rudolfovom

mišljenju b po njenom mišljenju c po mom mišljenju d po

njihovom mišljenju.

Comprehension a T b T c T. 1 c 2 a 3 b

Unit 11

Dialogue a T b F c T.

Practice 1 a u putničku agenciju b avionske karte c povratne

karte d u deset i petnaest e osamsto kuna f karte za brod g dva

tjedna kasnije h te večeri i prije tri godine j Rudolfov kolega

na poslu. 2 a Što ste pili svaki dan? b Što ste napisali? c Tko

vam je dao knjigu? d Jeste li bili na Hvaru? e Jeste li bili u

Dubrovniku? f Gdje su rezervirali karte? g Kad su otišli na odmor? h Kad ste bili u Dubrovniku? i Koliko košta povratna karta za Split? j Je li Rudolf radio u toj zgradi? 3 a pisao b dao c uzeli d popio. 4 a Nismo išli na Hvar prije tri godine. b Konobar mi nije dao salatu. c Konobar mi je nije dao. d Nisu kupili avionske karte u putničkoj agenciji. e Nisu ih kupili u putničkoj agenciji. f Nisam se jučer vratila iz Dubrovnika. g Nije čitao novine. h Nije ih čitao. 5 Dobar dan. Želim kupiti avionsku kartu za Dubrovnik. / U jednom smjeru, molim. Koliko košta karta? / U koliko sati ide iz Zagreba avion ponedjeljkom? / Želim kartu u ponedjeljak navečer, molim. / Imam privatnu sobu u Dubrovniku. / Hvala. Do viđenja. 6 a Koliko dugo traje put avionom od Zagreba do Splita? Četrdeset minuta. b Koliko dugo traje put autobusom od Zagreba do Rijeke? Šest sati. c Koliko dugo traje put avionom od Zagreba do Londona? Dva sata. d Koliko dugo traje put vlakom od Zagreba do Osijeka? Pet sati i dvadeset minuta.

Comprehension a F b T c T. 1 c 2 a 3 c

Unit 12

Dialogue a T b T c F.

Practice 1 a Ići ćemo u dobar restoran. b Javit ću joj se. c Naći ćemo stolicu u blagavaonici. d Tko će stići? e Što ćete raditi na odmoru? f Da li ćeš mu dati ključ? g Neće doći k nama.

h Neću biti na Hvaru. **2** Rekao/Rekla je a da možemo kupiti novine tamo kod lifta. b da je zaboravio naše avionske karte. c da ćemo ih sutra dobiti. d da će nam sutra dati novac. e da prodaju razglednice, koverta i marke u hotelu. f da to nije naše pismo. g da će danas biti lijepo vrijeme. h da nisu izgubili ključ od naše sobe. i da nas je netko tražio u hotelu. j da ne zna odakle je bio. **3** Pita/Pitala sam a da li je zaboravio gdje stanujemo. b da li će danas biti lijepo vrijeme. c da li je gospođa Bilčić kod kuće. d da li zna gdje mi je ključ. e da li će Rudolf doći u London. f da li je bio/bila u Engleskoj. g da li je bila u Engleskoj. h da li mogu dobiti čašu vode. i da li mogu doći sutra. j da li idemo k njegovom bratu sutra. **4 a** netko b ništa c ne gdje d nikad e nešto f nigdje. **5 a** iv b i c iii d ii. **6** Dobar dan. Je li gospodin Šimunić na poslu? / Molim vas, dajte mi njegov interni broj. / Halo. Ja sam... / Zaboravio sam vašu adresu. Možete li mi reći gdje radite? / Mogu li danas doći k vama? / Hvala. Do viđenja.

Comprehension a T b F c T. 1 b 2 b 3 a.

Unit 13**Dialogue a T b F c F.**

Practice 1 petsto šezdeset sedam, dvjesta trideset devet, osamsto sedam, trista jedan, tisuća petsto, tri tisuće sedamsto devedeset. 2 a četrnaesti ožujak b prvi lipanj c osmi kolovoz d trećeg rujna e dvadeset petog lipnja f dvadeset sedmog prosinca g tisuću devetsto osamdesete godine h tisuću devetsto šezdeset druge godine i dvadeset petog svibnja/ tisuću devetsto sedamdeset prve godine j jedanaestog siječnja/tisuću devetsto trideset pete godine. 3 a budućnosti b godinama c još d vremena e prošlosti f cijeli g čim. 4 a hoćete b hoću c hoće d htjela. 5 a tužno b veselo c iskreno d prijateljski. 6 a iii b iv c i d ii. 7 a Pije mi se čaj. b Danas nam se ide u grad. c Kupa joj se. d Danas mi se ide na plažu. 8 Tužan/Tužna sam. / Zato što mi se ne vraća kući. / Imam namjeru da se vratim. / Ne ljutim se na vas. Radujem se povratku. 9 a sebe b sobom c sebe d sebi.

Comprehension a T b F c F. 1 c 2 a 3 b**Unit 14****Dialogue a F b T c T.**

Practice 1 a Da b Ako c Da d Da e Ako/Kad f Ako g Ako h Da i Da j Ako/Kad. 2 Probudio sam se rano jutros. / Odlučio sam otići na plažu prije doručka. / Ako se vratim u devet sati, možemo ići zajedno na doručak. / Ako se ne vratim u devet, nemoj me čekati. / Idi na doručak. Kupit ću nešto na plaži. / Vidjet ću te u deset sati u našoj sobi. 3 a prešli b idete c izašla d doći e zalazi f prolazimo. 4 a kroz b na c po d iz e na f za g s h kod. 5 a kome b čime c nikoga d čega e ničega f koga g kome h nekome. 6 a iii b iv c i d ii.

Comprehension a T b F c T. 1 a 2 b 3 c.**Unit 15****Dialogue a T b F c T.**

Practice 1 Ne osjećam se dobro. / Boli me glava. / Jučer me je počela boljeti. / Bolio me je stomak prošlog tjedna, ali je to prošlo. / 2 a glava b ruka c noga d oko e uho f rame. 3 a starija b viši c mlađoj d bolji e skuplji f blažom g veselijeg h veće.

4 najstarija/ najviši/ najmlađoj/ najbolji/ najskuplji/ najblažom/ najveselijeg/ najveće. 5 a ljepše b toplije c hladnije d lakše.

6 a iii b i c iv d ii.

Comprehension a F b T c F. 1 a 2 c 3 b.

Unit 16**Dialogue a T b F c T.**

Practice 1 Danas sam razgovarao s gosodinom Markovićem./ Želi isključivo pravo na uvoz naših proizvoda iz Londona./ Pričao sam s njim o uvjetima poslovnog ugovora./ Šaljem te uvjete ovim faksom./ Mislim da su uvjeti dobri./ Gospodin Marković je rekao da će platiti za robu transferom preko banke./ 2 a koji b koji c koja d koju e kome f kojoj. 3 a koji b kog c kojoj d koja e kojem f kojim. 4 a deca su bila b ljudi su ušli c gospodu d gosti su sjedjeli e čaše f mlađe braće g kiosci su h lijepih parkova i ih j njihove muževe. 5 a iii b iv c ii d i.

Comprehension a F b T c T. 1 b 2 a 3 b

Unit 17**Dialogue a F b T c T.**

Practice 1 a Ja sam Jasna. Ja sam Hrvatica. Radim u Zagrebu. Imam dvadeset tri godine. Nisam udata. **b** Ja sam Vjeko. Ja sam Hrvat. Radim u Splitu. Imam četrdeset osam godina. Oženjen sam. **c** Ja sam Margaret. Ja sam Engleskinja. Radim u Leedsu. Imam trideset jednu godinu. Udata sam. **d** Ja sam Eva. Ja sam Njemica. Radim u Berlinu. Imam trideset četiri godine. Nisam udata. 2 a Idite do glavne ceste, skrenite lijevo, idite kroz park, kazalište se nalazi na lijevo. **b** Idite do glavne ceste, skrenite desno, idite kroz park, skrenite desno kod kazališta, idite ravno i pošta se nalazi na lijevo. **c** Idite do glavne ceste, skrenite lijevo, idite ravno i skrenite u prvu ulicu desno **d** Idite ravno, ne prema glavnoj cesti, glavni trg se nalazi na desno. 3 Dobra večer. Imate li jelovnik, molim vas? / Ja bih juhu, ribu i salatu. / Što biste preporučili? / Onda, ja bih bijelo vino, molim. / Mogu li dobiti kavu, molim vas? 4 a Vlak polazi u osam sati iz Zagreba, i stiže u dvanaest i deset u Osijek. **b** Vlak polazi u dvadeset pet do dvanaest iz Zagreba, i stiže u dva i dvadeset po podne na Rijeku. **c** Vlak polazi u dvanaest sati iz Zagreba, i stiže u pet do šest po podne u Split. 5 a dvije spavaće sobe, dnevna soba, kupaonica i kuhinja. **b** tri spavaće sobe, blagovaonica, dnevna soba, kuhinja i kupaonica. 6 a dvadeset četvrtog ožujka **b** prvog lipnja **c** treći kolovoz, osamnaestog studenog.

Comprehension a T b F c T.

Unit 18**Dialogue a T b T c T.**

Practice 1 a Koliko košta avionska karta za Dubrovnik?

Devetsto kuna. Koliko dugo traje put avionom do Dubrovnika? Četrdeset pet minuta. **b** Koliko košta vozna karta za Osijek? Trista osamdeset kuna. Koliko dugo traje put vlakom do Osijeka? Pet sati i deset minuta. **c** Koliko košta autobusna karta za Split? Dvjesto trideset pet kuna. Koliko dugo traje put autobusom do Splita? Pet sati i trideset minuta. **2 a** U Šibeniku **b** Zadar **c** U Hvaru **d** Zagreb. **3 a** Boli me glava. **b** Idem k liječniku. **c** postcard **d** toothpaste. **4** Štovani gospodine, Želio bih rezervirati u Vašem hotelu jednu dvokrevetnu sobu od četrnaestog do dvadesetog srpnja. Srdačno Vas pozdravlja... **5** Dobra večer. / Želio/Željela bih telefonsko buđenje u sedam i petnaest ujutro, molim. / Da, moram ići u London što prije. Imam tamo poslovni sastanak. Želim naručiti taksi za aerodrom, molim. / U osam sati, molim vas. Gdje se služi doručak? / A ja ću sad platiti račun. / Vrlo zadovoljan/zadovoljna, hvala. **6 a** drago mi je **b** dobro jutro **c** do viđenja **d** laku noć.

General

In this section you will find tables of the basic endings to nouns, adjectives and verbs which you have learnt in this course.

Remember that Croatian has some important spelling rules. Some consonants change when they occur before the vowel *i* in nouns:

k changes to **c**, **g** changes to **z**, **h** changes to **s**. For example:

kiosk	kiosci
knjiga	u knjizi
orah <i>walnut</i>	orasi <i>walnuts</i>

There are some exceptions, such as personal names (e.g. **Branka** to **Branki**) and other isolated examples (e.g. **taška** to **u taški**).

Another spelling rule concerns consonants which occur before **j**. This is particularly important when forming the comparative of the adjectives (see Unit 15 for details).

Croatian is spelt as it is pronounced. This has the following consequences:

a it tends to avoid double consonants except in the superlative form of adjectives

e.g. **jak**, **jači**, **najjači**.

b when two consonants come into contact in a word because of losing the separating vowel the spelling of the word alters to match the pronunciation:

e.g. **težak** (masc.) **teško** (neut.)

Judge your spelling according to pronunciation.

Masculine and neuter nouns and adjectives are effected by soft consonants. They are *c, č, ć, dž, đ, j, lj, nj, š* and *ž*. The most important effect is the change of *o* to *e* after one of these consonants. Note that some neuter nouns ending in *e* do not necessarily follow one of these consonants. You will find examples of these below.

Beware that in some books, and other printed material, the letter *đ* appears as *dj*.

Nouns

Masculine				
	singular	plural	singular	plural
nom.	grad	gradovi	prijatelj	prijatelji
voc.	grade	gradovi	prijatelju	prijatelji
acc.	grad	gradove	prijatelja	prijatelje
gen.	grada	gradova	prijatelja	prijatelja
dat.	gradu	gradovima	prijatelju	prijateljima
ins.	gradom	gradovima	prijateljem	prijateljima

In the singular of masculine nouns the accusative of inanimate objects is the same as the nominative, while the accusative of animate beings (human and animal) is the same as the genitive.

Sometimes there is a penultimate *a* which disappears when case endings are added. The *a* reappears in the genitive plural:

Nijemac (nom.) **Nijemca** (gen. singular) **Nijemaca** (gen. plural).

Similarly, in nouns which end in two or more consonants these letters are usually separated in the genitive plural by *a*, like the word for a *student*:

student (nom.) **studenta** (gen. singular) **studenata** (gen. plural).

Most masculine nouns of one syllable add *-ov-* before case endings (like *gradovi*) or *-ev-* after a soft consonant (like *muževi*).

Most masculine nouns end in a consonant. Some, however, end in *o* which converts to *l* when case endings are added:

posao (nom.) **posla** (gen. singular).

Some masculine nouns end in **a**. They follow the pattern of the feminine nouns which end in **a** but all adjectives and verbs agree with them as if they were masculine: **Ovo je moj tata.**

Feminine

	singular	plural	singular	plural
nom.	žena	žene	stvar	stvari
voc.	ženo	žene	stvar	stvari
acc.	ženu	žene	stvar	stvari
gen.	žene	žena	stvari	stvari
dat.	ženi	ženama	stvari	stvarima
ins.	ženom	ženama	stvari	stvarima

Feminine nouns which end in a consonant have an alternative instrumental singular form with **-ju** (e.g. **stvar** to **stvarju**).

In nouns which end in two or more consonants before a these letters are usually separated in the genitive plural by a (e.g. **marka** to **maraka**). Some also take the alternative ending **-i** (e.g. **torba** (*bag*) to **torbi**).

Neuter

	singular	plural	singular	plural
nom.	selo	sela	more	mora
voc.	selo	sela	more	mora
acc.	selo	sela	more	mora
gen.	sela	sela	mora	mora
dat.	selu	selima	moru	morima
ins.	selom	selima	morem	morima

In nouns which end with two or more consonants before **o** or **e** these letters are usually separated by **a** in the genitive plural (e.g. **pismo** to **pisama**).

Some neuter nouns add **-en-** and others **-et** before adding the case endings:

vrijeme (nom.)
dijete (nom.)

vremena (gen. singular)
djeteta (gen. singular).

Adjectives

Masculine

	singular	singular (adjective ending in soft consonant)
nom.	star/stari	vruć/vrući
voc.	stari	vrući
acc.	(as nom. or gen.)	(as nom. or gen.)
gen.	starog(a)	vrućeg(a)
dat.	starom(e) (u)	vrućem(u)
ins.	starim	vrućim

Feminine

	singular	singular (adjective ending in soft consonant)
nom.	stara	vruća
voc.	stara	vruća
acc.	staru	vruću
gen.	stare	vruće
dat.	staroj	vrućoj
ins.	starom	vrućom

Neuter

	singular	singular (adjective ending in soft consonant)
nom.	staro	vruće
voc.	staro	vruće
acc.	staro	vruće
gen.	starog(a)	vrućeg(a)
dat.	starom(e) (u)	vrućem(u)
ins.	starim	vrućim

Plural

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
nom.	stari	stare	stara
voc.	stari	stare	stara
acc.	stare	stare	stara
gen.	starih	starih	starih
dat.	starim(a)	starim(a)	starim(a)
ins.	starim(a)	starim(a)	starim(a)

The additional vowels are usually added when the adjective is used without a noun.

In some adjectives the penultimate *a* disappears when you add case endings. This sometimes has consequences for spelling:

bolestan (masc.)	bolesna (fem.)
dobar (masc.)	dobra (fem.)
kakav (masc.)	kakva (fem.)
težak (masc.)	teška (fem.)

Here is the pattern of changes for **koji** which is similar to **moj**, **tvoj** and **svoj** in having a shorter form without **-je-** in the middle:

	singular			plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
nom.	koji	koja	koje	koji	koje	koja
acc.	nom/gen	koju	koje	koje	koje	koja
gen.	kog(a)	koje	kog(a)	kojih	kojih	kojih
	kojeg(a)		kojeg(a)			
dat.	kom(e)	kojoj	kom(e)	kojim(a)	kojim(a)	kojim(a)
	kojem(u)		kojem(u)			
ins.	kojim	kojom	kojim	kojim(a)	kojim(a)	kojim(a)

Personal pronouns

Singular						
nom.	ja	ti	on	ona	ono	
acc.	mene	tebe	njega	nju	njega	
	me	te	ga	ju, je	ga	
gen.	mene	tebe	njega	nje	njega	
	me	te	ga	je	ga	
dat.	meni	tebi	njemu	njoj	njemu	
	mi	ti	mu	joj	mu	
ins.	mnom(e)	tobom	njim(e)	njom(e)	njim(e)	

Plural						
nom.	mi	vi	oni	one	ona	
acc.	nas	vas	njih	njih	njih	
	nas	vas	ih	ih	ih	
gen.	nas	vas	njih	njih	njih	
	nas	vas	ih	ih	ih	
dat.	nama	vama	njima	njima	njima	
	nam	vam	im	im	im	
ins.	nama	vama	njima	njima	njima	

Verbs

There are three basic categories of verbs distinguished by the vowel which occurs before the ending:

- a category

ja	čítam	mi	čítamo
ti	čítaš	vi	čítate
on/a/o	číta	oni/e/a	čitaju

- e category

ja	idem	mi	idemo
ti	ideš	vi	idete
on/a/o	ide	oni/e/a	idu

- i category

ja	radim	mi	radimo
ti	radiš	vi	radite
on/a/o	radi	oni/e/a	rade

There is not always an obvious link between the infinitive and the present tense. However, if you know the **ja** form of the present tense you will be able to make all the other forms as almost all verbs follow one of these patterns. Important exceptions are **biti** and **moći** (see Unit 3) and **htjeti** (see Unit 4).

For how to make commands see Unit 6.

For how to form the past tense see Unit 11.

For how to form the future tense see Unit 12.

For how to form the conditional and use *if* see Unit 14.

The following vocabulary consists of words used in the Dialogues and Comprehension passages of this course. Take note:

a the gender of nouns is indicated by **m** (masculine), **f** (feminine) or **n** (neuter) and by **pl** (plural) if it is a noun usually used in the plural;

b adjectives are given in the masculine singular nominative ending without **-i** when possible, followed by the endings for feminine and neuter nominative singular indicating when the penultimate **-a-** disappears (e.g. dobar, -bra, -bro);

c verbs are given in pairs with the imperfective form first; where there is only one verb it either functions as both imperfective and perfective or is the form which you have learnt to use in the language patterns explained in this course;

d the cases which follow prepositions are given.

a *and, but*

adresa (f) *address*

aerodrom (m) *airport*

agencija (f) *agency*

ako *if*

ali *but*

ambulanta (f) *clinic*

Amerika (f) *America*

antibiotik (m) *antibiotic*

apartman (m) *holiday apartment*

aperitiv (m) *aperitif*

aspirin (m) *aspirin*

atletski, -a, -o *athletic*

auto (m) *car*

autobus (m) *bus*

autobusni, -a, -o *bus*

autocesta (f) *motorway*

avion (m) *aeroplane*

avionski, -a, -o *aeroplane*

balkon (m) *balcony*

banka (f) *bank*

bar (m) *bar*

baš *quite*

baviti se *to take part in, to be occupied with*

bazen (m) *swimming pool*

benzin (m) *petrol*

benzinska stanica (f) *petrol station*

bez *without* (with gen. case)

bijel, -a, -o *white*

biti *to be*

blag, -a, -o *gentle*

blagajna (f) *checkout*

blagajnica (f) *checkout operator*

blagovaonica (f) *dining room*

blizina (f) *vicinity*

blizu *near* (with gen. case)

blok (m) *block of flats*

Bog (m) *God*
 boja (f) *colour*
 bolestan, -sna, -sno *ill*
 bolnica (f) *hospital*
 boljeti *to hurt, to ache*
 bolji, -a, -e *better*
 boraviti *to stay*
 Božić (m) *Christmas*
 brada (f) *chin*
 brak (m) *marriage*
 brašno (n) *flour*
 brat (m) *brother*
 brinuti se *to worry*
 brod (m) *boat, ship*
 broj (m) *number*
 brz, -a, -o *quick, fast*
 buditi se, probuditi se *to wake up*
 budući, -a, -e *future*
 budućnost (f) *future*
 buran, -rna, -rno *stormy*

centar (m) *centre*
 cesta (f) *road*
 cigareta (f) *cigarette*
 cijeli, -a, -o *whole*
 cipele (f pl) *shoes*
 cjenik (m) *price list*
 crkva (f) *church*
 crn, -a, -o *black*
 crno vino (n) *red wine*
 crven, -a, -o *red*

čaj (m) *tea*
 čamac (m) *boat*
 čarapa (f) *sock*
 čaša (f) *glass*
 ček (m) *cheque*
 čekati *to wait*
 čestitati *to congratulate*
 četvrtak (m) *Thursday*
 čiji, -a, -e *whose*
 čim *as soon as*
 činiti se *to seem*
 čitati, pročitati *to read*
 čovjek (m) *person, man*
 čuti *to hear*

da *yes, that*
 dalek, -a, -o *far, distant*
 daleko od *far from* (with gen. case)
 Dalmacija (f) *Dalmatia*

dan (m) *day*
 Danska *Denmark*
 davati, dati *to give*
 desno *right*
 dešavati se, desiti se *to happen*
 detaljan, -ljna, -ljno *detailed*
 dijete (n) *child*
 direktno *directly*
 divan, -vna, -vno *wonderful*
 dječji, -a, -e *children's*
 djevojka (f) *girl, young lady*
 dnevni, -a, -o *day, daily*
 do *up to, as far as* (with gen. case)
 do viđenja *goodbye*
 dobar, -bra, -bro *good, fine*
 dobiti *to get, to receive*
 dogovor (m) *agreement*
 dogovoren, -a, -o *agreed*
 dok *while*
 doktor (m) *doctor*
 dolaziti, doći *to come*
 donje rublje (n) *underwear*
 doručak (m) *breakfast*
 dosta *enough, much* (with gen. case)
 drago mi je *pleased to meet you*
 drugi, -a, -o *other, another, second*
 društvo (n) *company, society*
 drvo (n) *tree*
 dva, dvije *two*

džem (m) *jam*
 džep (m) *pocket*

ekran *screen*
 Engleska *England*
 engleski, -a, -o *English*
 Englez (m) *Englishman*
 Engleskinja (f) *Englishwoman*
 evo *here is* (with gen. case)

faks (m) *fax*
 fasada (f) *facade*
 firma (f) *firm, company*
 Francuska *France*
 francuski, -a, -o *French*
 Francuz (m) *Frenchman*
 Francuskinja (f) *Frenchwoman*
 frizerski salon (m) *hairdressing salon*
 frižider (m) *fridge*
 funta (f) *pound*

garaža (f) *garage*
 gazdarica (f) *landlady*
 gdje *where*
 generalni direktor (m) *general manager*

glacati *to iron*
 gladan, -dna, -dno *hungry*
 glavani, -vna, -vno *main*
 gledati, pogledati *to look at*
 godina (f) *year*
 gori, -a, -e *worse*
 gospodin (m) *Mr, gentleman*
 gospođa (f) *Mrs, madame*
 gospođica (f) *Miss, young lady*
 gost (m) *guest*
 gotov novac (m) *cash*
 govoriti *to speak*
 grad (m) *town*
 gradski, -a, -o *urban*
 grijanje (n) *heating*
 grlo (n) *throat*
 gubiti, izgubiti *to lose*

halo *hello* (on telephone)
 haljina (f) *dress*
 hlače (f pl) *trousers*
 hladan, -dna, -dno *cold*
 hokej (m) *hockey*
 hotel (m) *hotel*
 Hrvatska *Croatia*
 hrvatski, -a, -o *Croatian*
 Hrvat (m) *Croat* (man)
 Hrvatica (f) *Croat* (woman)
 htjeti *to want*
 hvala *thank you*

i *and*
 ići *to go*
 igralište (n) *pitch, court, playing area*
 igranje (n) *game, playing*
 igrati *to play*
 ili *or*
 imati *to have*
 ime (n) *name*
 inače *otherwise*
 industrijski, -a, -o *industrial*
 infekcija (f) *infection*
 informacije (f pl) *information*
 infrastruktura (f) *infrastructure*
 interni broj (m) *extension (telephone)*
 Irska *Ireland*

isključiv, -a, -o *exclusive*
 iskreno *sincerely*
 ispitivati, ispitati *to question*
 ispod *under* (with gen. case)
 ispred *in front of* (with gen. case)
 ispričavati se, ispričati se *to apologize*
 isti, -a, -o *same*
 istina (f) *truth*
 istok (m) *east*
 Istra (f) *Istria*
 Italija (f) *Italy*
 iz *from* (with gen. case)
 izdavati *to let out, to rent*
 izgledati (dobro) *to look (well)*
 izlaz (m) *exit*
 izlaziti, izaći *to go out*
 iznajmljivati, iznajmiti *to rent*
 izvan *outside* (with gen. case)
 izvolite *here you are*
 izvoz (m) *export*

ja *I*
 jaje (n) *egg*
 jak, -a, -o *strong*
 jakna (f) *jacket*
 jasno *clear, understood*
 javljati se, javiti se *to be in touch, to contact*
 jedan, -dna, -dno *one*
 jelo (n) *dish, meal*
 jelovnik (m) *menu*
 jer *for, since*
 jesti *to eat*
 jezik (m) *language, tongue*
 još *else, more*
 još uvijek *still*
 jug (m) *south*
 juha (f) *soup*
 jutarnji, -a, -e *morning*
 jutro (n) *morning*

k *towards* (with dat. case)
 kabina (f) *booth*
 kada *when*
 kakav -kva, -kvo *what kind of*
 kako *how*
 kako da ne *of course*
 kako to? *how come?*
 kamion (m) *lorry*
 kamo *where to*
 kao *as, like*

- kaput (m) *coat*
 karta (f) *ticket, map*
 karta u jednom smjeru *one-way ticket*
 povratna karta *return ticket*
 karta prvog razreda *first-class ticket*
 karta drugog razreda *second-class ticket*
 kartica (f) *credit card*
 kasnije *later*
 kašalj (m) *cough*
 kašljati *to cough*
 kat (m) *floor, storey*
 kauč (m) *couch*
 kava (f) *coffee*
 kavana (f) *café*
 kazalište (n) *theatre*
 kazati *to say, tell*
 kćerka (f) *daughter*
 kemijski čistiti *to dry-clean*
 kino (n) *cinema*
 kiosk (m) *kiosk*
 kiša (f) *rain*
 kišobran (m) *umbrella*
 klima (f) *climate*
 klinika (f) *clinic*
 klizanje (n) *skating*
 ključ (m) *key*
 knjiga (f) *book*
 kod *at the house of (with gen. case)*
 koji, -a, -e *who, which*
 kola (n pl) *car*
 kola za hitnu pomoć *ambulance*
 kolač (m) *cake*
 kolebanje (n) *hesitation*
 kolega (m) *colleague, person at work*
 koliko *how much, how many*
 kolodvor (m) *station*
 koljeno (n) *knee*
 komforan, -rna, -rno *comfortable*
 kompjutor (m) *computer*
 kompjutorski, -a, -o *computer*
 konačno *at last*
 konobar (m) *waiter*
 konobarica (f) *waitress*
 kopija (f) *copy*
 koristan, -sna, -sno *useful*
 koristiti *to use*
 kosa (f) *hair*
 košarka (f) *basketball*
 koštati *to cost*
 košulja (f) *shirt*
 koverta (f) *envelope*
 kraj (m) *area, end*
 kraj *next to (with gen. case)*
 krasti, ukrasti *to steal*
 kratak, -tka, -tko *short*
 kratkoročan, -čna, -čno *short term*
 kratkotrajan, -jna, -jno *short lived*
 kretati, krenuti *to set off*
 krevet (m) *bed*
 kriška (f) *wedge, piece*
 kriv, -a, -o *wrong, guilty, at fault*
 kroz *through (with acc. case)*
 kruh (m) *bread*
 kucati *to knock*
 kuća (f) *house*
 kuglana (f) *bowling alley*
 kuhati *to cook*
 kuhinja (f) *kitchen*
 kulturan, -rna, -rno *cultural*
 kuna (f) *kuna*
 kupači kostim (m) *swimming costume*
 kupaonica (f) *bathroom*
 kupati se *to bathe*
 kupiti *to buy*
 kurs (m) *exchange rate*
 lagan, -a, -o *light*
 lak, -a, -o *easy, light*
 laku noć *goodnight*
 led (m) *ice*
 leđa (n pl) *back*
 lice (n) *face*
 lift (m) *lift*
 lignje (f pl) *squid*
 lignje na ribarski način *squid 'fisherman style'*
 liječnica (f) *doctor (woman)*
 liječnik (m) *doctor (man)*
 lijep, -a, -o *beautiful, nice*
 lijevo *left*
 limun (m) *lemon*
 lipanj (m) *June*
 listopad (m) *October*
 loš, -a, -e *bad*
 lozovača (f) *grape brandy*
 luka (f) *harbour*
 ljeti *in summer*
 ljeto (n) *summer*

ljubazan, -zna, -zno <i>kind</i>	muž (m) <i>husband</i>
ljudi (m pl) <i>people, men</i>	na <i>on</i> (with dat. case)
ljut, -a, -o <i>angry</i>	na <i>to</i> (with acc. case)
ljutiti se <i>to be angry</i>	na žalost <i>unfortunately</i>
magla (f) <i>fog</i>	nacionalni specijalitet (m) <i>national dish</i>
majica (f) <i>T-shirt</i>	nadati se <i>to hope</i>
majka (f) <i>mother</i>	nalaziti, naći <i>to find</i>
Makedonija (f) <i>Macedonia</i>	nalaziti se <i>to be situated</i>
makedonski, -a, -o <i>Macedonian</i>	namjera (f) <i>intention</i>
Makedonac (m) <i>Macedonian man</i>	namještaj (m) <i>furniture</i>
Makedonka (f) <i>Macedonian woman</i>	naplata (f) <i>fee</i>
mali, -a, -o <i>small</i>	napuštati, napustiti <i>to leave</i>
malo <i>a little</i>	naravno <i>of course</i>
mama (f) <i>mum</i>	naručivati, naručiti <i>to order</i>
marka (f) <i>stamp</i>	naselje (n) <i>housing estate</i>
marketing (m) <i>marketing</i>	naslonjač (m) <i>armchair</i>
maslac (m) <i>butter</i>	nastavljati, nastaviti <i>to continue</i>
medicina (f) <i>medicine</i>	nastavnica (f) <i>teacher</i>
mediteranski, -a, -o <i>Mediterranean</i>	nastavnik (m) <i>teacher</i>
međutim <i>however</i>	naš, -a, -e <i>our</i>
mehaničar (m) <i>mechanic</i>	natrag <i>backwards, back</i>
meso (n) <i>meat</i>	navečer <i>in the evening</i>
mi <i>we</i>	ne <i>no, not</i>
mijenjati, promijeniti <i>to change</i>	nebo (n) <i>sky</i>
miješan, -a, -o <i>mixed</i>	nedjelja (f) <i>Sunday</i>
milijun (m) <i>million</i>	negdje <i>somewhere</i>
miran, -rna, -rno <i>peaceful</i>	nego <i>than</i>
misлити <i>to think</i>	neki, -a, -o <i>some, a few</i>
mišljenje (n) <i>opinion</i>	nema na čemu <i>don't mention it</i>
mjenjačnica (f) <i>exchange office, bureau de change</i>	nestajati, nestati <i>to disappear</i>
mjesec (m) <i>month</i>	nešto <i>something</i>
mjesto (n) <i>place</i>	netko <i>someone</i>
mlad, -a, -o <i>young</i>	ništa <i>nothing</i>
mlijeko (n) <i>milk</i>	nitko <i>no-one</i>
mlijeko za sunčanje <i>suntan lotion</i>	noć (f) <i>night</i>
mnogo <i>many, much, a lot of</i> (with gen. case)	noćenje (n) <i>overnight stay</i>
moći <i>to be able, can</i>	noćni klub (m) <i>night club</i>
mogući, -a, -e <i>possible</i>	noga (f) <i>leg, foot</i>
mogućnost (f) <i>possibility</i>	nogomet (m) <i>football</i>
moj, -a, -e <i>my</i>	nos (m) <i>nose</i>
molim <i>please</i>	nov, -a, -o <i>new</i>
moliti, zamoliti <i>to ask for, to beg</i>	novac (m) <i>money</i>
morati <i>to have to, must</i>	novčanik (m) <i>wallet, purse</i>
more (n) <i>sea</i>	novine (f pl) <i>newspaper</i>
morski, -a, -o <i>sea</i>	nož (m) <i>knife</i>
možda <i>perhaps</i>	nuditi, ponuditi <i>to offer</i>
mraz (m) <i>frost</i>	nula (f) <i>zero</i>
mrvice (f pl) <i>breadcrumbs</i>	njegov, -a, -o <i>his</i>

Njemačka *Germany*
 njemački, -a, -o *German*
 Nijemac (m) *German (man)*
 Njemica (f) *German (woman)*
 njen (njezin), -a, -o *her*
 njihov, -a, -o *their*

o *about (with dat. case)*
 obala (f) *coast*
 obalan, -lna, -lno *coastal*
 obično *usually*
 obitelj (f) *family*
 objekat (m) *facility, object*
 oblačan, -čna, -čno *cloudy*
 oblak (m) *cloud*
 obrok (m) *meal*
 očito *evidently, obviously*
 od *from (with gen. case)*
 odakle *where from*
 odgovarati *to suit, to correspond*
 odijelo (n) *suit*
 odjel (m) *department*
 odlazati, otići *to go away*
 odličan, -čna, -čno *excellent*
 odlučivati, odlučiti *to decide*
 odmah *immediately*
 odmarati se, odmoriti se *to rest, to take a holiday*
 odmor (m) *rest, holiday*
 oglas (m) *advertisement*
 ohrabrivati, ohrabriti *to encourage, to cheer up*
 oko (n) *eye*
 oko *around (with gen. case)*
 okolina (f) *neighbourhood, vicinity*
 okrenuti broj *to dial the number*
 on *he*
 ona *she*
 onaj, ona, ono *that*
 onda *then, next*
 oni, one *they*
 opasan, -sna, -sno *dangerous*
 opet *again*
 oprema (f) *equipment*
 oprostite *excuse me*
 ordinacija (f) *doctor's surgery*
 ormar (m) *cupboard*
 osim *except (with gen. case)*
 osjećaj (m) *feeling, emotion*
 osjećati se, osjetiti se *to feel*
 osoba (f) *person*

ostajati, ostati *to stay, to remain*
 ostavka (f) *resignation*
 ostavljati, ostaviti *to leave*
 otac (m) *father*
 otkad *from when, since*
 otok (m) *island*
 otvarati, otvoriti *to open*
 otvoreni, -a, -o *open*
 ovaj, ova, ovo *this*
 ovdje *here*
 ozdravljati, ozdraviti *to recover, to get better*
 oženiti se *to get married (of a man)*
 oženjen *married (of a man)*

padati *to fall*
 pakovati, spakovati *to pack*
 palačinka (f) *pancake*
 papar (m) *pepper*
 park (m) *park*
 parkiralište (n) *car park*
 parkirati *to park*
 pauza (f) *pause, break*
 pažljiv, -a, -o *careful*
 pero (n) *pen*
 pesimist (m) *pessimist*
 píce (n) *drink*
 pire od krumpira (n) *mashed potato*
 pisati, napisati *to write*
 pismo (n) *letter*
 pitati *to ask*
 piti, popiti *to drink*
 pivo (n) *beer*
 pješice *on foot*
 pjevati *to sing*
 plaćanje (n) *payment*
 plaćati, platiti *to pay*
 plan (m) *plan*
 planina (f) *mountain*
 plav, -a, -o *blue, blonde*
 plaža (f) *beach*
 ples (m) *dance, dancing*
 plivanje (n) *swimming*
 plivati *to swim*
 ploška (f) *slice*
 po *around, through (with dat. case)*
 početak (m) *beginning*
 počinjati, početi *to begin*
 podatak (m) *information*
 podne (n) *noon*
 podnositi *to tolerate*

područje (n) *region*
 pogled (m) *view*
 pogrešan, -šna, -šno *wrong*
 pokazivati, pokazati *to show*
 poklon (m) *present*
 polaziti, poći *to set off*
 polica (f) *shelf*
 policajac (m) *policeman*
 policijska postaja (f) *police station*
 polovica (f) *half*
 polupansion (m) *half board*
 polje (n) *field*
 Poljska *Poland*
 ponašanje (n) *behaviour*
 ponedjeljak (m) *Monday*
 ponekad *sometimes*
 ponovo *again*
 ponuda (f) *offer*
 pored *next to* (with gen. case)
 poruka (f) *message*
 posao (m) *work*
 poseban, -bna, -bno *special, separate*
 posjećivati, posjetiti *to visit*
 poslije *after* (with gen. case)
 poslovni sastanak (m) *business meeting*
 postajati, postati *to become*
 postojati *to exist*
 pošta (f) *post office*
 potpisivati, potpisati *to sign*
 povratak (m) *return*
 poziv (m) *invitation*
 pozivati, pozvati *to invite*
 pozivni broj (m) *code number*
 (telephone)
 praktičan, -čna, -čno *practical*
 prati, oprati *to wash*
 pravac (m) *direction*
 praviti, napraviti *to make*
 pravo (n) *right*
 predavati, predati *to hand over*
 predgrađe (n) *suburb*
 predjelo (n) *first course*
 predlagati, predložiti *to suggest*
 predstavnik (m) *representative*
 pregovor (m) *negotiation*
 prehladen, -a, -o *cold* (to have a cold)
 preko *across* (with gen. case)
 prelaziti, prijeći *to cross*
 prema *towards* (with dat. case)
 preporučivati, preporučiti *to*

recommend
 prestati *to stop*
 pretpostavljati *to suppose*
 previše *too much*
 pričati *to talk, to tell*
 prihvaćati *to accept*
 prijatelj (m) *friend*
 prijateljica (f) *friend*
 prijateljski, -a, -o *friendly*
 prijavivati, prijaviti *to announce*
 prije *before* (with gen. case)
 prijedlog (m) *suggestion*
 prijevoz (m) *transport*
 prilaziti, prići *to approach, to go up to*
 primiti, primiti *to receive, to accept*
 primorje (n) *coastal region, seashore*
 priroda (f) *nature, countryside*
 pristanište (n) *quay*
 pritisnuti *to pinch together*
 privatn, -tna, -tno *private*
 privredni, -dna, -dno *economic*
 prizemlje (n) *ground floor*
 priznati *to confess, to admit*
 probati *to try*
 problem (m) *problem*
 prodavač (m) *salesman*
 prodavačica (f) *saleswoman*
 prodavaonica (f) *shop*
 prodavati, prodati *to sell*
 proizvod (m) *product*
 proizvođenje (n) *production*
 proizvođenje pod licencijom
production under licence
 prostorija (f) *space*
 prošlost (f) *past*
 protiv *against* (with gen. case)
 provoditi, provesti *to spend* (time)
 prozor (m) *window*
 prst (m) *finger*
 prtljaga (f) *luggage*
 prvi, -a, -o *first*
 pržiti *to fry*
 puni pansion (m) *full board*
 put (m) *way, road, journey*
 putnički, -a, -o *traveller's, travel*
 putnik (m) *traveller*
 putovati *to travel*
 putovnica (f) *passport*
 račun (m) *bill*
 računalo (n) *computer*

- računovođa (m) *accountant*
 raditi *to do, to work*
 radni, -a, -o *working*
 rado *gladly*
 radovati se *to look forward to*
 rakija (f) *brandy*
 rame (n) *shoulder*
 rano *early*
 raspolaganje (n) *disposal*
 raspoložen, -a, -o *disposed*
 ravno *straight on*
 razboljeti se *to fall ill*
 razglednica (f) *postcard*
 razgovarati *to chat*
 razgovor *conversation*
 razmatrati, razmotriti *to examine, to discuss*
 razmišljati *to consider*
 razumjeti *to understand*
 razvijen, -a, -o *developed*
 recepcija (f) *reception*
 reci/recite *say, tell (imperative of reći)*
 reći *to say, to tell*
 reklamni odjel (m) *advertising department*
 restoran (m) *restaurant*
 rezervirati *to reserve*
 riba (f) *fish*
 ribarski, -a, -o *fishing*
 riječ (f) *word*
 rijeka (f) *river*
 riva (f) *promenade (by the sea)*
 roba (f) *goods*
 roditelj (m) *parent*
 rođen, -a, -o *born*
 roštilj (m) *grill, barbecue*
 rublje (n) *laundry*
 ručak (m) *lunch*
 ručati *to have lunch*
 ručnik (m) *towel*
 rujan (m) *September*
 ruka (f) *arm, hand*
 rukav (m) *sleeve*
 rukomet (m) *handball*
 rukometno igralište (n) *handball pitch*
 Rusija *Russia*
 ruski, -a, -o *Russian*
 Rus (m) *Russian (man)*
 Ruskinja (f) *Russian (woman)*
 s *with (with ins. case)*
 s *from, off (with gen. case)*
- sada *now*
 sadržaj (m) *facility, content*
 sala (f) *hall*
 sala za konferenciju *conference hall*
 salata (f) *salad*
 salon (m) *salon*
 salon za masažu *massage salon*
 sam, -a, -o *alone*
 samac (m) *bachelor*
 samo *only*
 samoposluga (f) *self-service shop*
 samostan (m) *monastery*
 sandale (f pl) *sandals*
 sanjati *to dream*
 sapun (m) *soap*
 sastanak (m) *meeting*
 sat (m) *clock, hour, class*
 sav, sva, sve *all*
 savjetovati *to advise*
 saznati *to get to know, to find out*
 sebe *oneself*
 sekretarica (f) *secretary*
 selo (n) *village*
 sendvič (m) *sandwich*
 sestra (f) *sister*
 siguran, -rna, -rno *sure, certain*
 sjati *to shine*
 silaziti, sići *to get down, to get off*
 sin (m) *son*
 sir (m) *cheese*
 sistem (m) *system*
 siv, -a, -o *grey*
 sjajan, -jna, -jno *wonderful, smashing*
 sjećati se, sjetiti se *to remember*
 sjediti *to be sitting*
 sjesti *to sit down*
 sjever (m) *north*
 skijanje (n) *skiing*
 skoro *almost*
 skrenuti *to turn*
 skup, -a, -o *expensive*
 skupljati se *to gather together, to meet together*
 slab, -a, -o *weak*
 sladoled (m) *ice cream*
 slagati se *to agree*
 slati, poslati *to send*
 slatko (n) *dessert*
 Slavonija (f) *Slavonia*
 slobodan, -dna, -dno *free*
 Slovenija (f) *Slovenia*

- slovenski, -a, -o *Slovenian*
Slovenac (m) *Slovenian man*
Slovenka (f) *Slovenian woman*
slučaj (m) *event, case*
slušati *to listen to*
službenik (m) *clerk, counter clerk*
služiti se, poslužiti se *to be served*
sljedeći, -a, -e *next, following*
smatrati *to consider*
smještaj (m) *accommodation*
smješten, -a, -o *situated, sited*
snijeg (m) *snow*
soba (f) *room*
sok (m) *juice*
sol (f) *salt*
spajati *to link, to join*
spavaća soba (f) *bedroom*
spavati *to sleep*
spomenik (m) *monument*
sport (m) *sport*
sportsko-rekreativni centar *sports centre*
spreman, -mna, -mno *ready, prepared*
spremati *to prepare*
Srbija (f) *Serbia*
srpski, -a, -o *Serbian*
Srbin (m) *Serbian (man)*
Srпкиnja (f) *Serbian (woman)*
srdačan, -čna, čno *cordial*
sredina (f) *middle*
središnji, -a, -e *middle, central*
sretan, -tna, -tno *happy*
srijeda (f) *Wednesday*
stadion (m) *stadium*
stajati *to be standing*
stalno *continuously*
stan (m) *flat*
stanica (f) *stop*
stanovati *to live, to reside*
stanovnik (m) *inhabitant*
star, -a, -o *old*
stavljati, staviti *to put*
stizati, stići *to arrive*
stol (m) *table*
stolica (f) *chair*
stolić (m) *little table*
stolni tenis (m) *table tennis*
stomak (m) *stomach*
stran, -a, -o *foreign*
strana (f) *side*
stric (m) *uncle*
strina (f) *aunt*
studirati *to study*
stvar (f) *thing*
stvarno *really*
subota (f) *Saturday*
suh, -a, -o *dry*
suknja (f) *skirt*
sumaglica (f) *mist*
sumrak (m) *dusk*
sunce (n) *sun*
sunčan, -a, -o *sunny*
sunčati se *to sunbathe*
suprug (m) *husband*
supruga (f) *wife*
suradnja (f) *co-operation*
suradivati *to co-operate*
sušiti se, osušiti se *to dry*
sutra *tomorrow*
suviše *too much*
svadba (f) *wedding*
svaki, -a, -o *each, every*
svakodnevni, -a, -o *everyday*
sveučilište (n) *university*
sviđati se *to like, to be pleasing*
svjetlosmeđi, -a, -e *light brown*
svjež, -a, -e *fresh*
svoj, -a, -e *one's own*
svugdje *everywhere*
šalica (f) *cup*
šalter (m) *counter*
šampon (m) *shampoo*
šef (m) *boss*
šešir (m) *hat*
šifra (f) *box number*
škola (f) *school*
Škotska *Scotland*
šorc (m) *shorts*
što *what, that*
Stovani, -a *Respected, Dear (in a formal letter)*
šuma (f) *forest*
šunka (f) *ham*
tada *then, at that time*
taj, ta, to *that*
tako *so*
također *also*
taksi (m) *taxi*
tanak, -nka, -nko *thin*
tamo *there*

- tanjur (m) *plate*
 taška (f) *bag, handbag*
 tata (m) *Dad*
 tava (f) *saucepan*
 tečaj (m) *course*
 teleći, -a, -e *veal*
 telefon (m) *telephone*
 telefonirati *to telephone*
 telefonski broj (m) *telephone number*
 telefonsko buđenje (n) *alarm call*
 temperatura (f) *temperature*
 tenis (m) *tennis*
 tepih (m) *carpet*
 terasa (f) *terrace*
 teren (m) *pitch, court*
 tetak (m) *uncle*
 tetka (f) *aunt*
 težak, -ška, -ško *difficult, heavy*
 ti *you* (singular)
 tih, -a, -o *quiet*
 tipičan, -čna, -čno *typical*
 tisuća (f) *thousand*
 tjedan (m) *week*
 tko *who*
 točan, -čna, -čno *exact, precise*
 tokom *during* (with gen. case)
 topao, -pla, -plo *warm*
 trajati *to last*
 tramvaj (m) *tram*
 transfer (m) *transfer*
 transportni odjel (m) *transport department*
 trava (f) *grass*
 travanj (m) *April*
 tražiti *to look for*
 trebati *to need, to require*
 treći, -a, -e *third*
 trend (m) *trend*
 trenutak (m) *moment*
 trg (m) *square*
 tri *three*
 trim kabinet (m) *exercise room*
 tržište (n) *market*
 turist (m) *tourist*
 turistički, -a, -o *tourist*
 turistkinja (f) *tourist*
 tuš (m) *shower*
 tuširati se, istuširati se *to shower, to have a shower*
 tužan, -žna, -žno *sad*
 tvoj, -a, -e *your* (singular)
- u *in* (with dat. case)
 u *to* (with acc. case)
 u redu OK, *all right*
 učenik (m) *pupil*
 učitelj (m) *teacher*
 učiteljica (f) *teacher*
 učiti, naučiti *to learn*
 udata *married (of a woman)*
 udati se *to get married* (of female)
 udoban, -bna, -bno *comfortable*
 ugao (m) *corner*
 ugovor (m) *contract*
 uho (n) *ear*
 ujak (m) *uncle*
 ujna (f) *aunt*
 ujutro *in the morning*
 ukratko *in short, briefly*
 ukus (m) *taste*
 ulaz (m) *entry*
 ulaziti, ući *to go in, to enter*
 ulica (f) *street*
 ulje (n) *oil*
 ulje za sunčanje *suntan oil*
 umoran, -rna, -rno *tired*
 uopće ne *not at all*
 upoznati *to introduce*
 upravo *just now*
 ured (m) *office*
 uskoro *soon*
 usluživati *to serve*
 usna (f) *lip*
 uspjeh (m) *success*
 usta (n pl) *mouth*
 ustajati, ustati *to get up*
 uvečer *in the evening*
 uvijek *always*
 uvjet (m) *condition*
 uvjetovati *to cause, to bring about*
 uvoz (m) *import*
 uzbuđen, -a, -o *excited*
 uzimati, uzeti *to take*
- valuta (f) *currency*
 vaš, -a, -e *your* (plural)
 važan, -žna, -žno *important*
 WC (m) (pronounced vetse) *toilet*
 večer (f) *evening*
 večera (f) *dinner*
 večerati *to have dinner*
 već *already*

vedar, -dra, -dro *clear, bright*
 velik, -a, -o *large, big*
 veoma *very*
 veseo, -la, -lo *jolly, merry*
 vi *you* (plural)
 vidjeti *to see*
 vilica (f) *fork*
 vino (n) *wine*
 visok, -a, -o *tall, high*
 više *more*
 vjenčati se *to get married*
 vjerojatno *probably, likely*
 vjetar (m) *wind*
 vjetar puše *the wind is blowing*
 vlak (m) *train*
 vlastit, -a, -o *own*
 voda (f) *water*
 voditi *to lead*
 voditi razgovor *to have a conversation*
 vojnik (m) *soldier*
 voljeti *to like, to love*
 voziti *to drive*
 vozni, -a, -o *train*
 vraćati se, vratiti se *to return*
 vrat (m) *neck*
 vrata (n pl) *door*
 vrijeme (n) *time, weather*
 vrlo *very*
 vrsta (f) *sort, kind*
 vrt (m) *garden*
 vruć, -a, -e *hot*

za *for* (with acc. case)
 za *behind* (with ins. case)
 zaboravljati, zaboraviti *to forget*
 zadovoljan, -ljna, -ljno *pleased, satisfied*
 zadržavanje (n) *keeping*
 zagrebački odrezak (m) *Zagreb schnitzel*
 zagrijati *to heat, to warm*
 zaista *really*
 zaključak (m) *conclusion*
 zaključavati, zaključati *to lock*
 zalaziti, zaći *to go behind*
 zaljev (m) *bay*
 zamišljati, zamisliti *to imagine*
 zamrzivač (m) *freezer*
 zapad (m) *west*
 zapisivati, zapisati *to note down*

zaprostiti *to ask for girl's hand in marriage*
 zašto *why*
 zatim *then, next*
 zato što *because*
 zatvoren, -a, -o *closed*
 zaustavljati se, zaustaviti se *to stop*
 zauzet, -a, -o *busy, engaged*
 zavisi od *depends on* (with gen. case)
 zavjesa (f) *curtain*
 završavati, završiti *to finish*
 zdravo *hello, goodbye* (colloquial)
 zelen, -a, -o *green*
 zgrada (f) *building*
 zima (f) *winter*
 zimi *in winter*
 značiti *to mean*
 znanje (n) *knowledge*
 znati *to know*
 zoološki vrt (m) *zoo*
 zračna luka (f) *airport*
 zrakoplov (m) *aeroplane*
 zrakoplovan, -vna, -vno *aeroplane*
 zubar (m) *dentist*
 zubna pasta (f) *toothpaste*
 zvati, nazvati *to call*
 zvati se *to be called*

žao mi je *I am sorry*
 želja (f) *desire, wish*
 žedan, -dna, -dno *thirsty*
 željeti *to want, to desire*
 žena (f) *woman, wife*
 živjeti *to live*
 život (m) *life*
 žlica (f) *spoon*
 žut, -a, -o *yellow*

- able, to be* moći
about o (with dat. case)
accept, to prihvaćati; primati, primiti
accommodation smještaj (m)
accountant računovođa (m)
ache, to boljeti
across preko (with gen. case)
address adresa (f)
admit, to priznati
advertisement oglas (m)
advertising department reklamni odjel (m)
advise, to savjetovati
aeroplane avion (m); zrakoplov (m); avionski, -a, -o
after poslije (with gen. case)
again opet; ponovo
against protiv (with gen. case)
agency agencija (f)
agree, to slagati se
agreed dogovoren, -a, -o
agreement dogovor (m)
airport aerodrom (m); zračna luka (f)
alarm call telefonsko buđenje (n)
all sav, sva, sve
all right u redu
almost skoro
alone sam, -a, -o
already već
also također
always uvijek
ambulance kola za hitnu pomoć (pl)
America Amerika (f)
and i; a
angry ljut, -a, -o
angry, to be ljutiti se
announce, to prijavljivati, prijaviti
another drugi, -a, -o
antibiotic antibiotik (m)
aperitif aperitiv (m)
apologize, to ispričavati se, ispričati se
approach, to prilaziti, prići
April travanj (m)
area kraj (m)
arm ruka (f)
armchair naslonjač (m)
around oko (with gen. case); po (with dat. case)
arrive, to stizati, stići
as kao
as far as do (with gen. case)
as soon as čim
ask, to pitati
ask for, to moliti, zamoliti
ask for girl's hand in marriage, to zaprositi
aspirin aspirin (m)
at (time) u (with acc. case)
at the house of kod (with gen. case)
athletic atletski, -a, -o
aunt strina (f); tetka (f); ujna (f)
bachelor samac (m)
back leđa (n pl)
backwards natrag
bad loš, -a, -e
bag taška (f)
balcony balkon (m)
bank banka (f)
bar bar (m)
barbecue roštilj (m)
basketball košarka (f)

- bathe*, to kupati se
bathroom kupaonica (f)
bay zaljev (m)
be, to biti
beach plaž (m)
beautiful lijep, -a, -o
because zato što
become, to postajati, postati
bed krevet (m)
bedroom spavaća soba (f)
beer pivo (n)
before prije (with gen. case)
beg, to moliti, zamoliti
begin, to počinjati, početi
beginning početak (m)
behaviour ponašanje (n)
behind za (with ins. case)
better bolji, -a, -e
better, to get ozdravljati, ozdraviti
big velik, -a, -o
bill račun (m)
black crn, -a, -o
block of flats blok (m)
blonde plav, -a, -o
blue plav, -a, -o
boat brod (m); čamac (m)
book knjiga (f)
booth kabina (f)
born rođen, -a, -o
boss šef (m)
bowling alley kuglana (f)
box number šifra (f)
brandy rakija (f)
bread kruh (m)
breadcrumbs mrvice (f pl)
break pauza (f)
breakfast doručak (m)
briefly ukratko
bright vedar, -dra, -dro
bring about, to uvjetovati
brother brat (m)
building zgrada (f)
bureau de change mjenjačnica (f)
bus autobus (m); autobusni, -a, -o
business meeting poslovni sastanak (m)
busy zauzet, -a, -o
but ali, a
butter maslac (m)
buy, to kupiti
café kavana (f)
cake kolač (m)
call, to zvati, nazvati
called, to be zvati se
can moći
car auto (m); kola (n pl)
car park parkiralište (n)
careful pažljiv, -a, -o
carpet tepih (m)
case slučaj (m)
cash gotov novac (m)
cause, to uvjetovati
central središnji, -a, -e
centre centar (m)
certain siguran, -rna, -rno
chair stolica (f)
change, to mijenjati, promijeniti
chat, to razgovarati
checkout blagajna (f)
checkout operator blagajnica (f)
cheer up, to ohrabrivati, ohrabriti
cheese sir (m)
cheque ček (m)
child dijete (n)
children's dječji, -a, -e
chin brada (f)
Christmas Božić (m)
church crkva (f)
cigarette cigareta (f)
cinema kino (n)
class sat (m)
clear vedar, -dra, -dro
clerk službenik (m)
climate klima (f)
clinic ambulanta (f); klinika (f)
clock sat (m)
closed zatvoren, -a, -o
cloud oblak (m)
cloudy oblačan, -čna, -čno
coast obala (f)
coastal obalan, -lna, -lno
coastal region primorje (n)
coat kaput (m)
code number (telephone) pozivni broj (m)
coffee kava (f)
cold hladan, -dna, -dno
cold (have a cold) prehladen, -a, -o
colleague (man) kolega (m)
colleague (woman) kolegića (f)

- colour* boja (f)
come, to dolaziti, doći
comfortable komforan, -rna, -rno;
 udoban, -bna, -bno
company društvo (n); firma (f)
computer kompjutor (m); računalo (n)
computer kompijutorski, -a, -o
conclusion zaključak (m)
condition uvjet (m)
conference hall sala za konferenciju
 (f)
confess, to priznati
congratulate, to čestitati
consider, to razmišljati; smatrati
contact, to javljati se, javiti se
content sadržaj (m)
continue, to nastavljati, nastaviti
continuously stalno
contract ugovor (m)
conversation razgovor (m)
cook, to kuhati
co-operate, to surađivati
co-operation suradnja (f)
copy kopija (f)
cordial srdačan, -čna, -čno
corner ugao (m)
cost, to koštati
couch kauč (m)
cough kašalj (m)
cough, to kašljati
counter šalter (m)
counter clerk službenik (m)
countryside priroda (f)
course tečaj (m)
court (for games) igralište (n); teren
 (m)
credit card kartica (f)
Croatia Hrvatska
Croatian hrvatski, -a, -o
Croat (man) Hrvat (m)
Croat (woman) Hrvatica (f)
cross, to prelaziti, prijeći
cultural kulturnan, -rna, -rno
cup šalica (f)
cupboard ormar (m)
currency valuta (f)
curtain zavjesa (f)
- dad* tata (m)
daily dnevni, -a, -o
Dalmatia Dalmacija (f)
- dance* ples (m)
dangerous opasan, -sna, -sno
daughter kćerka (f)
day dan (m)
decide, to odlučivati, odlučiti
Denmark Danska
dentist zubar (m)
department odjel (m)
depends on zavisi od (with gen. case)
desire želja (f)
desire, to željeti
dessert slatko (n)
detailed detaljan, -ljna, -ljno
developed razvijen, -a, -o
dial the number, to okrenuti broj
difficult težak, -ška, -ško
dining room blagovaonica (f)
dinner večera (f)
dinner, to have večerati
direction pravac (m)
directly direktno
disappear, to nestajati, nestati
discuss, to razmatrati, razmotriti
dish jelo (n)
disposal raspolaganje (n)
disposed raspoložen, -a, -o
distant dalek, -a, -o
do, to raditi
doctor doktor (m)
doctor (man) liječnik (m)
doctor (woman) liječnica (f)
doctor's surgery ordinacija (f)
don't mention it nema na čemu
door vrata (n pl)
dream, to sanjati
dress haljina (f)
drink piće (n)
drink, to piti, popiti
drive, to voziti
dry suh, -a, -o
dry, to sušiti se, osušiti se
dry clean, to kemijski čistiti
during tokom (with gen. case)
dusk sumrak (m)
- each* svaki, -a, -o
ear uho (n)
early rano
east istok (m); istočni, -a, -o
easy lak, -a, -o
eat, to jesti

- economic* privredni, -dna, -dno
egg jaje (n)
else još
emotion osjećaj (m)
empty prazan, -zna, -zno
encourage, to ohrabrivati, ohrabriti
end kraj (m)
engaged zauzet, -a, -o
engaged in, to be baviti se
England Engleska
English engleski, -a, -o
Englishman Englez (m)
Englishwoman Engleskinja (f)
enough dosta (with gen. case)
enter, to ulaziti, ući
entry ulaz (m)
envelope koverta (f)
equipment oprema (f)
evening večer (f)
event slučaj (m)
every svaki, -a, -o
everyday svakodnevi, -a, -o
everywhere svugdje
evidently očito
exact točan, -čna, -čno
examine, to razmatrati, razmotriti
excellent odličan, -čna, -čno
except osim (with gen. case)
exchange office mjenjačnica (f)
exchange rate kurs (m)
excited uzbuđen, -a, -o
exclusive isključiv, -a, -o
excuse me oprostite
exercise room trim kabinet (m)
exist, to postojati
exit izlaz (m)
expensive skup, -a, -o
export izvoz (m)
extension (telephone) interni broj (m)
eye oko (n)
- facade* fasada (f)
face lice (n)
facility objekat (m); sadržaj (m)
fall, to padati
fall ill, to razboljeti se
family obitelj (f)
far dalek, -a, -o
far from daleko od (with gen. case)
fast brz, -a, -o
father otac (m)
- fax* faks (m)
fee naplata (f)
feel osjećati se, osjetiti se
feeling osjećaj (m)
few, a few neki, -a, -o
field polje (n)
finally konačno
find, to nalaziti, naći
find out, to saznati
finger prst (m)
finish, to završavati, završiti
firm firma (f)
first prvi, -a, -o
first course predjelo (n)
fish riba (f)
fishing ribarski, -a, -o
flat stan (m)
floor kat (m)
flour brašno (n)
fog magla (f)
following sljedeći, -a, -e
foot noga (f)
football nogomet (m)
for jer; za (with acc. case)
foreign stran, -a, -o
forest šuma (f)
forget, to zaboravljati, zaboraviti
fork vilica (f)
France Francuska
French francuski, -a, -o
Frenchman Francuz (m)
Frenchwoman Francuskinja (f)
free slobodan, -dna, -dno
freezer zamrzivač (m)
fresh svjež, -a, -e
fridge frižider (m)
friend (man) prijatelj (m)
friend (woman) prijateljica (f)
friendly prijateljski, -a, -o
from iz (with gen. case); od (with gen. case); s (with gen. case)
from when otkad
frost mraz (m)
fry, to pržiti
full pun, -a, -o
full board puni pansion (m)
furniture namještaj (m)
future budućnost (f); budućí, -a, -e
- game* igranje (n)
garage garaža (f)

garden vrt (m)
gather together, to skupljati se
general manager generalni direktor (m)
gentle blag, -a, -o
gentleman gospodin (m)
Germany Njemačka
German njemački, -a, -o
German (man) Nijemac (m)
German (woman) Njemica (f)
get, to dobiti
get off, to silaziti, sići
get up, to ustajati, ustati
girl djevojka (f)
give, to davati, dati
gladly rado
glass čaša (f)
go, to ići
go away, to odlaziti, otići
go behind, to zalaziti, zaći
go in, to ulaziti, ući
go out, to izlaziti, izaći
go up to, to prilaziti, prići
God Bog (m)
good dobar, -bra, -bro
goodnight laku noć (f)
goodbye do videnja; zdravo (colloquial)
goods roba (f)
grass trava (f)
green zelen, -a, -o
grey siv, -a, -o
grill roštilj (m)
ground floor prizemlje (n)
guest gost (m)
guilty kriv, -a, -o

hair kosa (f)
hairdressing salon frizerski salon (m)
half polovica (f)
halfboard polupansion (m)
hall sala (f)
ham šunka (f)
hand ruka (f)
hand over, to predavati, predati
handbag taška (f)
handball rukomet (m)
happy sretan, -tna, -tno
happen, to dešavati se, desiti se
harbour luka (f)
bat šešir (m)

have, to imati
have to, to morati
he on
hear, to čuti
heat, to zagrijati
heating grijanje (n)
heavy težak, -ška, -ško
hello dobar dan; halo (on telephone);
 zdravo (colloquial)
her njen (njezin), -a, -o
here ovdje
here is evo (with gen. case)
here you are izvolite
hesitation kolebanje (n)
high visok, -a, -o
his njegov, -a, -o
hockey hokej (m)
holiday odmor (m)
holiday apartment apartman (m)
hope, to nadati se
hospital bolnica (f)
hot vruć, -a, -e
hotel hotel (m)
hour sat (m)
house kuća (f)
housing estate naselje (n)
how kako
how come? kako to?
how many koliko (with gen. case)
how much koliko
however međutim
hungry gladan, -dna, -dno
hurt, to boljeti
husband muž (m); suprug (m)

I ja
ice led (m)
ice cream sladoled (m)
if ako
ill bolestan, -sna, -sno
imagine, to zamišljati, zamisliti
immediately odmah
import uvoz (m)
important važan, -žna, -žno
in u (with dat. case)
in front of ispred (with gen. case)
industrial industrijski, -a, -o
infection infekcija (f)
information informacije (f pl);
 podatak (m)
infrastructure infrastruktura (f)

inhabitant stanovnik (m)
intention namjera (f)
introduce, to upoznati
invitation poziv (m)
invite, to pozivati, pozvati
Ireland Irska
iron, to glačati
island otok (m)
Istria Istra (f)
Italy Italija (f)

jacket jakna (f)
jam džem (m)
join, to spajati
jolly veseo, -la, -lo
journey put (m)
juice sok (m)
June lipanj (m)
just now upravo

key ključ (m)
kind vrsta (f)
kind ljubazan, -zna, -zno
kiosk kiosk (m)
kitchen kuhinja (f)
knee koljeno (n)
knife nož (m)
knock, to kucati
know, to znati
knowledge znanje (n)
kuna kuna (f)

landlady gazdarica (f)
language jezik (m)
large velik, -a, -o
last, to trajati
later kasnije
laundry rublje (n)
lead, to voditi
learn, to učiti, naučiti
leave, to napuštati, napustiti;
 ostavljati, ostaviti
left lijevo
leg noga (f)
lemon limun (m)
let out, to izdavati
letter pismo (n)
life život (m)
lift lift (m)
light lagan, -a, -o; lak, -a, -o
like kao

like, to sviđati se; voljeti
likely vjerojatno
link, to spajati
lip usna (f)
listen to, to slušati
little mali, -a, -o
little, a little malo
live, to stanovati; živjeti
living room dnevna soba (f)
lock, to zaključavati, zaključati
look (at), to gledati; pogledati
look (well), to izgledati (dobro)
look for, to tražiti
look forward to, to radovati se
lorry kamion (m)
lose, to gubiti, izgubiti
lots of, a lot of mnogo (with gen. case)
love, to voljeti
luggage prtljaga (f)
lunch ručak (m)
lunch, to have ručati

Macedonia Makedonija (f)
Macedonian makedonski, -a, -o
Macedonian (man) Makedonac (m)
Macedonian (woman) Makedonka (f)
madam gospođa (f)
main glavan, -vna, -vno
make, to praviti, napraviti
man čovjek (m)
many mnogo (with gen. case)
map karta (f)
market tržište (n)
marketing marketing (m)
marriage brak (m)
married (of a man) oženjen
married (of a woman) udata
married, to get vjenčati se
married, to get (of a man) oženiti se
married, to get (of a woman) udati se
meal jelo (n); obrok (m)
mean, to značiti
meat meso (n)
mechanic mehaničar (m)
medicine medicina (f)
Mediterranean mediteranski, -a, -o
meet together, to skupljati se
meeting sastanak (m)
menu jelovnik (m)

- merry* veseo, -la, -lo
message poruka (f)
middle sredina (f); središnji, -a, -e
milk mlijeko (n)
million milijun (m)
Miss gospođica (f)
mist sumaglica (f)
mixed miješan, -na, -no
moment trenutak (m)
monastery samostan (m)
Monday ponedjeljak (m)
money novac (m)
month mjesec (m)
monument spomenik (m)
more još; više
morning jutro (n); jutarnji, -a, -e
mother majka (f)
motorway autocesta (f)
mountain planina (f)
mouth usta (n pl)
Mr gospodin (m)
Mrs gospođa (f)
much dosta (with gen. case); mnogo
 (with gen. case)
mum mama
must morati
my moj, -a, -e

name ime (n)
nature priroda (f)
near blizu (with gen. case)
neck vrat (m)
need, to trebati
negotiations pregovori (m pl)
neighbourhood okolina (f)
new nov, -a, -o
newspaper novine (f pl)
next onda; zatim; sljedeći, -a, -e
next to kraj (with gen. case); pored
 (with gen. case)
nice lijep, -a, -o
night noć (f)
no, not ne
no-one nitko
noon podne (n)
north sjever (m); sjeverni, -a, -o
nose nos (m)
note down, to zapisivati, zapisati
nothing ništa
now sada
number broj (m)
- object* objekat (m)
obviously očito
occupied with, to be baviti se
October listopad (m)
of course kako da ne; naravno
off s (with gen. case)
offer ponuda (f)
offer, to nuditi, ponuditi
office ured (m)
oil ulje (n)
OK u redu
old star, -a, -o
on na (with dat. case)
on foot pešice
one jedan, -dna, -dno
oneself sebe
one's own svoj, -a, -e
only samo
open otvarati, otvoriti
open otvoren, -a, -o
opinion mišljenje (n)
or ili
order, to naručivati, naručiti
other drugi, -a, -o
otherwise inače
our naš, -a, -e
outside izvan (with gen. case)
overnight stay noćenje (n)
own vlastit, -a, -o

pack, to pakovati, spakovati
pancake palačinka (f)
parent roditelj (m)
park park (m)
park, to parkirati
passport putovnica (f)
past prošlost (f)
pause pauza (f)
pay, to plaćati, platiti
payment plaćanje (n)
peaceful miran, -rna, -rno
pen pero (n)
pepper papar (m)
perhaps možda
person čovjek (m); osoba (f)
pessimist pesimist (m)
petrol benzin (m)
petrol station benzinska stanica (f)
pinch together, to pritisnuti
pitch igralište (n); teren (m)

- place* mjesto (n)
plan plan (m)
plate tanjur (m)
play, to igrati
playing igranje (n)
playing area igralište (n)
please molim
pleased zadovoljan, -ljna, -ljno
pocket džep (m)
Poland Poljska
police policija (f)
policeman policajac (m)
police station policijska postaja (f)
possibility mogućnost (f)
possible mogući, -a, -e
post office pošta (f)
postcard razglednica (f)
pound funta (f)
practical praktičan, -čna, -čno
precise točan, -čna, -čno
prepare, to spremati
prepared spreman, -mna, -mno
present poklon (m)
price cijena (f)
price list cjenik (m)
private privatn, -tna, -tno
probably vjerojatno
problem problem (m)
product proizvod (m)
production proizvodnje (n)
promenade (by the sea) riva (f)
pupil učenik (m)
purse novčanik (m)
put, to stavljati, staviti

quay pristanište (n)
question, to ispitivati, ispitati
quick brz, -a, -o
quiet tih, -a, -o
quite baš

rain kiša (f)
read, to čitati, pročitati
ready spreman, -mna, -mno
really stvarno; zaista
receive, to dobiti; primiti
reception recepcija (f)
recommend, to preporučivati, preporučiti
recover, to ozdravljati, ozdraviti
red crven, -a, -o

region područje (n)
remain ostajati, ostati
remember, to sjećati se, sjetiti se
rent, to izdavati; iznajmljivati, iznajmiti
reply, to odgovarati, odgovoriti
representative predstavnik (m)
require, to trebati
reserve, to rezervirati
reside, to stanovati
resignation ostavka (f)
respect poštovanje (n)
Respected (in a letter) Štovani, Štovana
rest odmor (m)
rest, to odmarati se, odmoriti se
restaurant restoran (m)
return povratak (m)
return, to vraćati se, vratiti se
right desno; pravo (n)
river rijeka (f)
road cesta (f); put (m)
room soba (f)
Russia Rusija
Russian ruski, -a, -o
Russian (man) Rus (m)
Russian (woman) Ruskinja (f)

sad tužan, -žna, -žno
salad salata (f)
salesman prodavač (m)
saleswoman prodavačica (f)
salon salon (m)
salt sol (f)
same isti, -a, -o
sandals sandale (f pl)
sandwich sendvič (m)
satisfied zadovoljan, -ljna, -ljno
Saturday subota (f)
saucepan tava (f)
say, to kazati; reći
school škola (f)
Scotland Škotska
screen ekran (m)
sea more (n); morski, -a, -o
seashore primorje (n)
second drugi, -a, -o
secretary sekretarica (f)
see, to vidjeti
seem, to činiti se
self-service shop samoposluga (f)

sell, to prodavati, prodati
send, to slati, poslati
separate poseban, -bna, -bno
September rujan (m)
Serbia Srbija
Serbian srpski, -a, -o
Serbian (man) Srbin (m)
Serbian (woman) Srkinja (f)
serve, to služiti, poslužiti; usluživati
served, to be služiti se, poslužiti se
set off, to kretati, krenuti; polaziti,
 poći
shampoo šampon (m)
she ona
shelf polica (f)
shine, to sijati
ship brod (m)
shirt košulja (f)
shoes cipele (f pl)
shop prodavaonica (f)
short kratak, -tka, -tko
short lived kratkotrajan, -jna, -jno
short term kratkoročan, -čna, -čno
shorts šorc (m)
shoulder rame (n)
show, to pokazivati, pokazati
shower tuš (m)
shower, to tuširati se, istuširati se
side strana (f)
sign, to potpisivati, potpisati
since jer; otkad
sincerely iskreno
sing, to pjevati
sister sestra (f)
sit down, to sjesti
sitting, to be sjediti
situated smješten, -a, -o
situated, to be nalaziti se
skating klizanje (n)
skiing skijanje (n)
skirt suknja (f)
sky nebo (n)
Slavonia Slavonija (f)
sleep, to spavati
sleeve rukav (m)
slice ploška (f)
Slovenia Slovenija (f)
Slovenian slovenski, -a, -o
Slovenian (man) Slovenac (m)
Slovenian (woman) Slovenka (f)
small mali, -a; -o

smashing sjajan, -jna, -jno
snow snijeg (m)
so tako
soap sapun (m)
society društvo (n)
sock čarapa (f)
soldier vojnik (m)
some neki, -a, -o
someone netko
something nešto
sometimes ponekad
somewhere negdje
son sin (m)
soon uskoro
sorry žao
sort vrsta (f)
soup juha
south jug (m); južni, -a, -o
space prostorija (f)
speak, to govoriti
special poseban, -bna, -bno
spend (time), to provoditi, provesti
spoon žlica (f)
sport sport (m); sportski, -a, -o
square trg (m)
squid lignje (f pl)
stadium stadion (m)
stamp marka (f)
standing, to be stajati
station kolodvor (m)
stay, to boraviti; ostajati, ostati
steal krasti, ukrasti
still još uvijek
stomach stomak (m)
stop (bus) stanica (f)
stop, to prestati; zaustavljati se,
 zaustaviti se
storey kat (m)
stormy buran, -rna, -rno
straight on ravno
street ulica (f)
strong jak, -a, -o
study radna soba (f)
study, to studirati
suburb predgrađe (n)
success uspjeh (m)
suggest, to predlagati, predložiti
suggestion prijedlog (m)
suit odijelo (n)
suit, to odgovarati
summer ljeta (n)

- sun* sunce (n)
sunbathe, to sunčati se
Sunday nedjelja (f)
sunny sunčan, -a, -o
suntan lotion mlijeko za sunčanje (n)
suntan oil ulje za sunčanje (n)
suppose, to pretpostavljati
sure siguran, -rna, -rno
swim, to plivati
swimming plivanje (n)
swimming costume kupaći kostim (m)
swimming pool bazen (m)
system sistem (m)
- table* stol (m)
table tennis stolni tenis (m)
take, to uzimati, uzeti
take a holiday, to odmarati se, odmoriti se
take part in, to baviti se
talk, to pričati
tall visok, -a, -o
taste ukus (m)
taxi taksi (m)
tea čaj (m)
teacher (man) nastavnik (m); učitelj (m)
teacher (woman) nastavnica (f); učiteljica (f)
telephone telefon (m)
telephone number telefonski broj (m)
telephone, to telefonirati
tell, to kazati; pričati; reći
temperature temperatura (f)
tennis tenis (m)
terrace terasa (f)
than nego
thank you hvala
that da; što
that onaj, ona, ono; taj, ta, to
theatre kazalište (n)
their njihov, -a, -o
then onda; tada; zatim
there tamo
they oni, one
thin tanak, -nka, -nko
thing stvar (f)
think, to misliti
third treći, -a, -e
thirsty žedan, -dna, -dno
- this* ovaj, ova, ovo
thousand tisuća (f)
three tri
throat grlo (n)
through kroz (with acc. case); po (with dat. case)
Thursday četvrtak (m)
ticket karta (f)
first-class ticket karta prvog razreda
second-class ticket karta drugog razreda
one-way ticket karta u jednom smjeru
return ticket povratna karta
time vrijeme (n)
tired umoran, -rna, -rno
to na (with acc. case); u (with acc. case)
toilet WC (m) (pronounced *vetse*)
tolerate, to podnositi
tomorrow sutra
tongue jezik (m)
too much previše; suviše
tooth zub (m)
toothpaste zubna pasta (f)
tourism turizam (m); turistički, -a, -o
tourist (man) turist (m)
tourist (woman) turistkinja (f)
towards k (with dat. case); prema (with dat. case)
towel ručnik (m)
town grad (m)
train vlak (m); vozni, -a, -o
tram tramvaj (m)
transfer transfer (m)
transport prijevoz (m)
transport department transportni odjel (m)
travel, to putovati
traveller putnik (m)
traveller's putnički, -a, -o
tree drvo (n)
trend trend (m)
trousers hlače (f pl)
truth istina (f)
try, to probati
T-shirt majica (f)
turn, to skrenuti
two dva, dvije
typical tipičan, -čna, -čno
umbrella kišobran (m)

uncle stric (m); tetak (m); ujak (m)
under ispod (with gen. case)
understand, to razumjeti
underwear donje rublje (n)
unfortunately na žalost
university sveučilište (n)
up to do (with gen. case)
urban gradski, -a, -o
use, to koristiti
useful koristan, -sna, -sno
usually obično

veal teleći, -a, -e
very veoma; vrlo
vicinity blizina (f); okolina (f)
view pogled (m)
village selo (n)
visit, to posjećivati, posjetiti

wait, to čekati
waiter konobar (m)
waitress konobarica (f)
wake up, to buditi se, probuditi se
wallet novčanik (m)
want, to htjeti; željeti
warm topao, -pla, -plo
warm, to zagrijati
wash, to prati, oprati
water voda (f)
way put (m)
we mi
weak slab, -a, -o
weather vrijeme (n)
wedding svadba (f)
wedge kriška (f)
Wednesday srijeda (f)
week tjedan (m)
west zapad (m); zapadni, -a, -o
what što
what kind of kakav, -kva, -kvo
when kada
where gdje
where from odakle
where to kamo
which koji, -a, -e
while dok
white bijel, -a, -o
who koji, -a, -e; tko
whole cijeli, -a, -o
whose čiji, -a, -e
why zašto

wife supruga (f); žena (f)
wind vjetar (m)
window prozor (m)
wine vino (n)
winter zima (f)
wish želja (f)
with s (with ins. case)
without bez (with gen. case)
woman žena (f)
wonderful divan, -vna, -vno; sjajan, -jna, -jno
word riječ (f)
work posao (m)
work, to raditi
working radni, -a, -o
worry, to brinuti se
worse gori, -a, -e
write, to pisati, napisati
wrong kriv, -a, -o; pogrešan, -šna, -šno

year godina (f)
yellow žut, -a, -o
yes da
you (singular) ti
you (plural) vi
young mlad, -a, -o
young lady djevojka (f); gospođica (f)
your (singular) tvoj, -a, -e
your (plural) vaš, -a, -e

Zagreb schmitzel zagrebački odrezak (m)
zero nula (f)
zoo zooški vrt (m)

Adjective An adjective is a word used to qualify or describe a noun or pronoun, e.g. *Rudolf is tall. Rudolf je visok. She is young. Ona je mlada.*

Adverb Adverbs are used to qualify or modify an adjective or a verb, e.g. *She is very young. Ona je veoma mlada. Jasna sings well. Jasna dobro pjeva.*

Agreement Agreement is when words which are used together have the same grammatical number, gender or case.

Case Cases in Croatian are indicated by changes made to nouns, adjectives and pronouns. Croatian is presented in this book with six cases: nominative, vocative, accusative, genitive, dative, instrumental. Cases tell you the function of a noun in a sentence.

Comparative When making comparisons we need the comparative form of the adjective. In English this is usually done by adding *-er* to the adjective or by putting *more* in front. *This shirt is cheaper than that one. Ova košulja je jeftinija nego ona. This coat is more expensive. Ovaj kaput je skuplji.*

Conditional This is a form of the verb to show that an event might have happened or might yet take place.

Enclitics Croatian has two forms of the verb *to be* *biti* and *to want* *htjeti* in the present tense and two forms for personal pronouns in cases other than the nominative (see **Pronoun** and **Case**). The shorter form of these alternatives is called the enclitic with rules for when and how they are to be used.

Gender In English the term gender refers to whether human beings or animals are male or female. In Croatian, as in many

European languages, all nouns have a gender which is masculine, feminine or neuter. Sometimes the grammatical gender of a noun may tell you if the word refers to a male or female being but it is not primarily a biological reference. The word *table stol* is masculine, while *chair stolica* is feminine and *sea more* is neuter. Adjectives which are used to describe these words must agree with the gender of the noun and change accordingly. There are rules which help you to determine the gender of nouns and to change adjectives to agree with them.

Imperative The imperative is the form of the verb used to give directions, instructions, orders or commands.

Infinitive The infinitive is the basic form of the verb often used when two verbs are seen together, e.g. *She likes to live in London. Ona voli živjeti u Londonu.* In English the infinitive is formed from two words (*to live*), while in Croatian it is one word (*živjeti*) which ends either in *-ti* or in *-ći*.

Noun Nouns are words which name things and people, e.g. *room soba, person čovjek.*

Number Number is the term used to indicate whether words are singular or plural.

Object The object of a verb indicates what or who is on the receiving end of an action, unlike the subject which tells you who is performing the action (see **Subject**). There are two types of object. The direct object indicates on what or whom the action is performed, e.g. *Rudolf likes coffee. Rudolf voli kavu.* *Coffee* is the direct object in this sentence as it is the object being liked and here is expressed in the accusative case. The indirect object in a sentence indicates what or who is the beneficiary of an action, e.g. *He bought a book for his sister. Kupio je sestri knjigu.* *Sister* is the indirect object in this sentence as she is the beneficiary of the action, the one for whom the book has been bought, and here is expressed in the dative case. Indirect objects in English are usually preceded by *to* or *for*.

Person Person is the term which refers to the separate parts of a verb. Verbs have six persons, three in singular (I, you, he/she/it) and three in plural (we, you, they) and endings of verbs change to indicate which person is the subject.

Plural See **Singular**.

Possessive adjectives Possessive adjectives such as *my* and *mine* indicate who possesses what in a sentence. *This is my coffee. That coffee is yours. Ovo je moja kava. Ta kava je vaša.*

Preposition Prepositions are words which generally show relationships between people or things, e.g. *Jasna is in the room. Jasna je u sobi.*

Pronouns Pronouns are often used to substitute for nouns which have usually been mentioned once already. *This is my husband. He is standing in the square. Ovo je moj muž. On stoji na trgu.* Such pronouns as *I* *ja*, *he* *on* are called personal pronouns and are often omitted in Croatian because the ending of the verb indicates the person (see **Person**), e.g. *This is my husband. He is standing in the square. Ovo je moj muž. Stoji na trgu.*

Reflexive verb These are constructions in which the word *se*, meaning *oneself*, accompanies the verb.

Singular The terms singular and plural are used to contrast between one and more than one, e.g. *book/books knjiga/knjige.*

Subject The subject names the person or thing who is performing the action of the verb of a sentence, e.g. *Rudolf likes coffee. Rudolf voli kavu.* Rudolf is the subject as he is the one who likes coffee and is expressed here in the nominative case.

Superlative The superlative part of the adjective is formed in English by adding *-est* to the adjective or by using *most*. *This shirt is the cheapest of all. Ova košulja je najjeftinija od svih. This coat is the most expensive. Ovaj kaput je najskuplji.*

Tense Tense indicates the time when the action of the verb in a sentence takes place.

Verb Verbs usually indicate the action of a sentence, e.g. *He is playing football. On igra nogomet.* They may indicate sensations, e.g. *I feel fine. Osjećam se dobro.* They may also be used to show a state, e.g. *Today is a fine day. Danas je lijep dan.*

Verbal aspect The aspect of a verb tells you more about the quality of the action in a sentence. It tells you if the action was or will be completed, if the action took place or will take place on more than one occasion, if the action was or will be in process but not completed for some reason. Croatian has an imperfective aspect (for unfinished or regular actions, e.g. *to write pisati*) and a perfective aspect (for completed actions e.g. *to write napisati*). *He wrote to his brother every day. Pisao je bratu svaki dan. Yesterday he wrote a letter to his brother. Jučer je napisao pismo bratu.*

The numbers below refer to units in the book.

- accusative case **2, 3, 4**
 adjectives **2, 7, 8, 11, 12, 13, 15**
 adverbs **13, 15**
 aspects **6, 11, 12, 13, 14**
 comparative of adjectives **15**
 conditions and if clauses **14**
 dative case **2, 4, 12**
 declension of countries **7**
 declension of surnames **12**
 demonstrative pronouns
 (*this, that*) **8**
 enclitics (short forms) **1, 2, 3, 5, 6**
 future tense **12**
 gender **1, 7, 11**
 genitive case **3, 4, 5, 11, 14**
 imperative (command form)
6, 15
 indirect question **12**
 indirect statement **12**
 instrumental case **5, 6, 14, 16**
 interrogative pronouns (*who, what, whose*) **12, 14, 16, 17**
 nominative case **3, 4**
 numerals **4, 6, 7, 9, 13, 17**
 past tense **11**
 possessive adjectives **1, 2, 3, 7, 12**
 present tense **1, 2, 3**
 reflexive verbs **9, 13, 17**
 relative pronouns (*who, which*)
16
 subject pronouns **1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 10**
 superlative of adjectives **15**
 time constructions **8, 9, 13, 14**
 verbs of movement **14**
 vocative case **5**
 word order **9, 10, 11, 12**

Visitors to Croatia

For the latest information regarding visits to Croatia, holidays and general information contact The Croatian National Tourist Office which has branches in many countries.

Jonathan Bousfield, *The Rough Guide to Croatia* (Rough Guides, London, 2000) is full of easy-to-find and useful information for all types of travellers to Croatia.

Language

Damir Kalogjera (editor-in-chief), *Englesko-hrvatski i hrvatsko-engleski rječnik* (Naklada C, Zagreb, 1996) is a compact dictionary ideal for the beginner.

Željko Bujas, *Veliki hrvatsko-engleski rječnik* and *Veliki englesko-hrvatski rječnik* (Nakladni zavod Globus, Zagreb, 1999) is a more detailed dictionary in two volumes.

Your local university may offer courses in Croatian. Contact the Slavonic Studies Department or Continuing Education for evening classes and ask what is available.

Background Information

For Croatia in the Balkan context see Misha Glenny, *The Balkans 1804–1999: Nationalism, War and the Great Powers* (Granta Books, London, 1999).

For Croatia in the Yugoslav context see Leslie Benson, *Yugoslavia: A Concise History* (Palgrave, Basingstoke/New York, 2001).

For Croatia in the break up of Yugoslavia see Laura Silber and Allan Little, *The Death of Yugoslavia* (Penguin and BBC Books, London, 1995).

For general Croatian history see Marcus Tanner, *Croatia: A Nation Forged in War* (Yale University Press, New Haven/London, 1997).

Useful Internet addresses

Croatian National Tourist Board	www.croatia.hr
Dalmatia	www.dalmacija.net
Istrian Tourist Association	www.istra.com
Matica hrvatska cultural organization	www.matica.hr
Zagreb city information	www.zagreb-touristinfo.hr



**teach[®]
yourself**

Afrikaans
 Arabic
 Arabic Script, Beginner's
 Bengali
 Brazilian Portuguese
 Bulgarian
 Cantonese
 Catalan
 Chinese
 Chinese, Beginner's
 Chinese Language, Life & Culture
 Chinese Script, Beginner's
 Croatian
 Czech
 Danish
 Dutch
 Dutch, Beginner's
 Dutch Dictionary
 Dutch Grammar
 English, American (EFL)
 English as a Foreign Language
 English, Correct
 English Grammar
 English Grammar (EFL)
 English, Instant, for French Speakers
 English, Instant, for German Speakers
 English, Instant, for Italian Speakers
 English, Instant, for Spanish Speakers
 English for International Business
 English Language, Life & Culture
 English Verbs
 English Vocabulary
 Finnish
 French
 French, Beginner's
 French Grammar
 French Grammar, Quick Fix
 French, Instant
 French, Improve your
 French Language, Life & Culture
 French Starter Kit
 French Verbs

French Vocabulary
 Gaelic
 Gaelic Dictionary
 German
 German, Beginner's
 German Grammar
 German Grammar, Quick Fix
 German, Instant
 German, Improve your
 German Language, Life & Culture
 German Verbs
 German Vocabulary
 Greek
 Greek, Ancient
 Greek, Beginner's
 Greek, Instant
 Greek, New Testament
 Greek Script, Beginner's
 Gulf Arabic
 Hebrew, Biblical
 Hindi
 Hindi, Beginner's
 Hindi Script, Beginner's
 Hungarian
 Icelandic
 Indonesian
 Irish
 Italian
 Italian, Beginner's
 Italian Grammar
 Italian Grammar, Quick Fix
 Italian, Instant
 Italian, Improve your
 Italian Language, Life & Culture
 Italian Verbs
 Italian Vocabulary
 Japanese
 Japanese, Beginner's
 Japanese, Instant
 Japanese Language, Life & Culture
 Japanese Script, Beginner's
 Korean

Latin
 Latin American Spanish
 Latin, Beginner's
 Latin Dictionary
 Latin Grammar
 Nepali
 Norwegian
 Panjabi
 Persian, Modern
 Polish
 Portuguese
 Portuguese, Beginner's
 Portuguese Grammar
 Portuguese, Instant
 Portuguese Language, Life & Culture
 Romanian
 Russian
 Russian, Beginner's
 Russian Grammar
 Russian, Instant
 Russian Language, Life & Culture
 Russian Script, Beginner's
 Sanskrit
 Serbian
 Spanish
 Spanish, Beginner's
 Spanish Grammar
 Spanish Grammar, Quick Fix
 Spanish, Instant
 Spanish, Improve your
 Spanish Language, Life & Culture
 Spanish Starter Kit
 Spanish Verbs
 Spanish Vocabulary
 Swahili
 Swahili Dictionary
 Swedish
 Tagalog
 Teaching English as a Foreign Language
 Teaching English One to One
 Thai
 Turkish
 Turkish, Beginner's
 Ukrainian
 Urdu
 Urdu Script, Beginner's
 Vietnamese
 Welsh
 Welsh Dictionary
 Welsh Language, Life & Culture
 Xhosa
 Zulu

the A-Z of teach yourself language titles

available from bookshops and on-line retailers